

**Evgenia Antova  
Ekaterina Boytchinova  
Poly Benatova**

**A SHORT GRAMMAR OF  
B U L G A R I A N  
FOR ENGLISH SPEAKING LEARNERS**

**Second revised edition: Ekaterina Boytchinova  
Editor: Prof. Stefka Petrova**

Editors of the first edition (1991):  
prof. Andrei Danchev, prof. Stefka Petrova

Цена 10 лв.



Evgenia Antova, Ekaterina Boytchinova, Poly Benatova

---

**A SHORT GRAMMAR OF B U L G A R I A N  
FOR ENGLISH SPEAKING LEARNERS**

A SHORT GRAMMAR OF  
B U L G A R I A N  
FOR ENGLISH SPEAKING LEARNERS

© Evgenia Antova 2002  
© Ekaterina Boytchinova 2002  
© Poly Benatova 2002

ISBN 155311241-8

**Evgenia Antova  
Ekaterina Boytchinova  
Poly Benatova**

**A SHORT GRAMMAR OF  
B U L G A R I A N  
FOR ENGLISH SPEAKING LEARNERS**

© Evgenia Antova, 2002  
© Ekaterina Boytchinova, 2002  
© Poly Benatova, 2002

ISBN 954-91197-1-8

Издава - "АВМ Комерс" ЕТ, "АСПА" СД  
София, 2002



## SOME BASIC DATA ABOUT THE BULGARIAN LANGUAGE

Modern Bulgarian is one of the South Slavonic languages, descendant of Old Bulgarian. Various later adaptations of old Bulgarian are often referred to as Old Church Slavonic. Modern Bulgarian is now the official standard language of the Republic of Bulgaria.

Bulgarian and Slavonic writing developed after the creation of the Cyrillic Alphabet in the 9th century (A.D.). Bulgarian is in fact the oldest Slavonic language which used writing for literary work and one of the oldest in Europe. The Slavonic literary tradition flourished for several centuries in the Bulgarian lands and spread to Serbia and Russia.

The development of the Bulgarian language is usually divided into the following three stages: Old Bulgarian - from the 9th to the 11th century; Middle Bulgarian - from the 12th to the 15th century; and Modern Bulgarian - from the 15th century up to the present times.

The development of Bulgarian offers some parallels to the development of the English language. Now it stands out as the only analytical language in the family of the Slavonic languages. It has some common features with the Balkan languages: e.g. loss of the Infinitive, a post-positioned article (as in Roumanian), formation of the Future Tense with an Auxiliary particle. Other very important features are the simplified structure of the Noun (no case endings) and the rich variety of verbal forms.

Unlike English, however, Bulgarian spelling is mainly phonetic. With a few exceptions, nearly each letter of the alphabet stands for one sound. In certain cases, the spelling is morphological.

## PREFACE

The present grammar aims at giving a systematic exposition of Bulgarian morphology, pronunciation and spelling for foreigners speaking English as a native or as a second language and studying Bulgarian with or without a teacher, and for teachers of Bulgarian.

In it syntax is touched upon only briefly and in connection with morphology, when the uses of a morphological form are explained.

Particular attention has been paid to the following aspects of Bulgarian

Grammar, which may present greater difficulty to learners: the gender of the noun and the adjective and agreement in gender of a word with its head-noun, word formation (suffixes with nouns and prefixes with verbs), the definite article, the aspect of the verbs and their use in the system of tenses, the renarrated mood, word-order peculiarities of the Bulgarian sentence (enclitics, proclitics, doubling of the object, etc.) Much attention has been devoted to stress.

When structuring the grammar units we first set forth the essence and principal peculiarities of the category concerned, then we distinguish the similarities and differences with the English grammar category, in the third place the morphological forms have been shown, and their use in sentences.

All examples are based on contemporary colloquial Bulgarian and have been translated into English.

The terminology accepted is after Scatton's "Reference Grammar of Modern Bulgarian".

Authors

The second revised edition adds comparisons with Russian language.

I am deeply indebted to prof. St. Petrova for her encouragement. Her detailed comments have helped me very substantially with the preparation of the second edition - without her suggestions and advice almost every page of this book would have less to offer.

E. Boytchinova

## THE BULGARIAN ALPHABET БЪЛГАРСКАТА АЗБУКА

Printed letter	Hand-written	Phonetic transcr.	Pronunciation of the letter in the Alphabet
А а	А а	[a]	[a]
Б б	Б б	[b]	[bə]
В в	В в	[v]	[və]
Г г	Г г	[g]	[gə]
Д д	Д д	[d]	[də]
Е е	Е е	[e]	[e]
Ж ж	Ж ж	[ʒ]	[ʒə]
З з	З з	[z]	[zə]
И и	И и	[i]	[i]
Й й	Й й	[j]	['i'kratko]
К к	К к	[k]	[kə]
Л л	Л л	[l]	[lə]
М м	М м	[m]	[mə]
Н н	Н н	[n]	[nə]
О о	О о	[o]	[o]
П п	П п	[p]	[pə]
Р р	Р р	[r]	[rə]
С с	С с	[s]	[sə]
Т т	Т т	[t]	[tə]
У у	У у	[u]	[u]
Ф ф	Ф ф	[f]	[fə]
Х х	Х х	[x]	[xə]
Ц ц	Ц ц	[c]	[cə]
Ч ч	Ч ч	[č]	[čə]
Ш ш	Ш ш	[ʃ]	[ʃə]
Щ щ	Щ щ	[ʃt]	[ʃtə]
Ъ ъ	Ъ ъ	[ə]	['ergo'ljam]
Ь ь	Ь ь	[j]	['er'malək]
Ю ю	Ю ю	[ju]	[ju]
Я я	Я я	[ja]	[ja]



THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET  
РУССКИЙ АЛФАВИТ

Printed letter	Hand-written	Phonetic transcr.	Pronunciation of the letter in the Alphabet
Аа	<i>Аа</i>	[a]	[a]
Бб	<i>Бб</i>	[b]	[be]
Вв	<i>Вв</i>	[v]	[ve]
Гг	<i>Гг</i>	[g]	[ge]
Дд	<i>Дд</i>	[d]	[de]
Ее	<i>Ее</i>	[je]	[je]
Ёё	<i>Ёё</i>	[jo]	[jo]
Жж	<i>Жж</i>	[ž]	[že]
Зз	<i>Зз</i>	[z]	[ze]
Ии	<i>Ии</i>	[i]	[i]
Йй	<i>Йй</i>	[j]	[iko`rotkoe]
Кк	<i>Кк</i>	[k]	[ka]
Лл	<i>Лл</i>	[l]	[el]
Мм	<i>Мм</i>	[m]	[em]
Нн	<i>Нн</i>	[n]	[en]
Оо	<i>Оо</i>	[o]	[o]
Пп	<i>Пп</i>	[p]	[pe]
Рр	<i>Рр</i>	[r]	[er]
Сс	<i>Сс</i>	[s]	[es]
Тт	<i>Тт</i>	[t]	[te]
Уу	<i>Уу</i>	[u]	[u]
Фф	<i>Фф</i>	[f]	[fe]
Хх	<i>Хх</i>	[x]	[xa]
Цц	<i>Цц</i>	[c]	[ce]
Чч	<i>Чч</i>	[č]	[če]
Шш	<i>Шш</i>	[š]	[ša]
Щщ	<i>Щщ</i>	[šč]	[šča]
Ъъ	<i>Ъъ</i>	[ə]	[`tvjordəj`znak]
Ыы	<i>Ыы</i>	[əj]	[er`əj]
Ьь	<i>Ьь</i>	[j]	[`mjaxkij`znak]
Ээ	<i>Ээ</i>	[e]	[`eəba`rotnae]

Юю	Юю	[ju]	[ju]
Яя	Яя	[ja]	[ja]

## PHONETICS ФОНЕТИКА

### Articulation (General Notes)

In contrast with English where the muscles are quite relaxed, the articulation of the sounds in Bulgarian requires greater tensivity of the muscles. The force of the air stream is weaker and the degree of explosion in the formation of plosive consonants is much smaller. It should be born in mind that the sounds of Bulgarian, although roughly similar to some sounds that exist in English, do not correspond exactly to English sounds.

### Vowels Гласни

Bulgarian has six vowel sounds, which occur in both stressed and unstressed syllables. The Bulgarian vowels differ from the vowels of English not only in number but in the manner and place of articulation as well.

In comparison to English long and short vowels, Bulgarian vowels are neither very open nor very close. Differences of vowel length are not phonologically important in Bulgarian, that is, no words are differentiated only by the length of the vowel. Vowels are pronounced with medium length.

Bulgarian vowels allow a number of variants, which facilitates learning at the beginning stages.

### Diagram of the Vowels in Bulgarian

	vowel/letter	central	back
		not round	round
		vowel/letter	vowel/letter
high	[i] ( <i>и</i> )	[a] ( <i>а</i> )	[o] ( <i>о</i> )
mid	[e] ( <i>е</i> )	[ə] ( <i>ѐ</i> )	[u] ( <i>у</i> )
low			

1. Bulgarian [i], spelt with the letter *и* is a longer and closer sound

than English short [i] as in **fish** but shorter and laxer than English long [i:] as in **feet**. It is similar to the [i] sound in some European languages like French, German, Italian, etc.

дим [dim]	'smoke'
риба [ˈriba]	'fish'
пиша [ˈpiʂa]	'to write'

In Russian this vowel is pronounced as in Bulgarian. Example - **писа́ть** - the Russian infinitive 'to write'.

2. The Bulgarian vowel [e], spelt with the letter *е* is close to English [e] as in **get**.

ден [den]	'day'
есен [ˈesen]	'autumn'
зелѐн [zeˈlen]	'green'

In Russian this vowel tends to be pronounced as the diphthong in **yes** - example **де́нь** [djen] - 'day'.

3. The Bulgarian vowel [a], spelt with the letter *а* is quite similar to the first constituent of the English diphthongs [aj] as in **five** and [au] as in **house**.

ма́са [ˈmasa]	'table'
ча́нта [ˈčanta]	'bag'
река́ [reˈka]	'river'

Both in Bulgarian and in Russian when this vowel is not stressed tends to be pronounced as [ə] - **карти́на** [kərˈtina] meaning 'picture' in both languages.

4. The Bulgarian vowel [ə], spelt with the letter *ѐ* is similar to the English sound [ə], which is in unstressed syllables as in **student** but the tongue should be retracted and raised higher. It is close to the stressed vowel of **come** in American English. This vowel is typical for the Bulgarian language. In Russian there is no such a vowel in a stressed position and in words of the same root as Bulgarian **зѐб** this vowel is [u] in Russian - **зуб**. Another example is Bulgarian **спѐтник**, Russian **спу́тник** 'satellite'.

зѐб [zɐp]	'tooth'
бѐлгарин [ˈbɐlgarin]	'Bulgarian'
ѐгъл [ˈɛgəl]	'corner', 'angle'

5. The Bulgarian vowel [o], spelt with the letter *о* is similar to English [o] as in **hot**, but the lips are more active in the formation of the



Bulgarian [o], which is more rounded.

нощ [nošt]	'night'
прозорец [pro`zorec]	'window'
легло [leg`lo]	'bed'

When not under stress this vowel tends to be pronounced as [u] while in Russian - as [ə] when it is far from the stressed syllable, and next to the stressed vowel as [a]. The word for 'milk' in Bulgarian is *мляко* pronounced [ˈmljaku], and in Russian *молоко* pronounced [mɐlaˈko].

6. The Bulgarian vowel [u], spelt with the letter *y* is tenser, closer and more retracted than English [u]. The lips are quite active in producing the rounding of the Bulgarian sound.

уча [ˈuʃa]	'to study'
буква [ˈbukva]	'letter'
прочута [pro`čuta]	'famous', 'well-known'

In Russian this vowel is quite similar to the Bulgarian - compare the Russian infinitive for 'to study' *учить*.

### Unstressed Vowels

#### Неударени гласни

In unstressed position vowels are shorter, laxer, more central and weaker than their stressed counterparts.

In unstressed syllables, especially in Eastern dialects and generally in rapid speech [e] is narrowed to [i], [a] tends to be reduced to [ə], and [o] is raised to [u].

### Consonants

#### Съгласни

The consonants of Bulgarian are articulated less energetically than those of English. Voiced consonants are devoiced at the end of words. The same phonetic rule is true in Russian language. The word for 'coast, bank' in Bulgarian is spelt *брег* and pronounced [brjak], in Russian spelt *берег* and pronounced [ˈbjerek].

#### 1. [b] : [p]

The Bulgarian consonants [b] and [p], spelt with the letters *б* and *п* are slightly different from English [b] and [p]. They are formed with a protrusion of the lips and the explosion is weaker than in the articulation of the English sounds.

България [bəl`garija]	'Bulgaria'
пита́м [ˈpitam]	'to ask'
ра́бота [ˈrabota]	'work'
продава́ч [proda`vač]	'salesman'
добъ́р [do`bər]	'good'
про́лет [ˈprolet]	'spring'

The consonant [b] is devoiced and pronounced as [p] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *б*.

хля́б [xljap]	'bread'
but: хле́бен [ˈxleben]	'bread' (adj.)
ро́б [rop]	'slave'
but: ро́би [ˈrobi]	'slaves'
гарде́рòб [garde`rop]	'wardrobe'
but: гарде́рòби [garde`robi]	'wardrobes'
Лю́бчо [ˈljurčo]	
but: Лю́бен [ˈljuben]	

Some examples from Russian:

хле́б [hljɐp]	'bread',
but: хле́бный [ˈhlebnəj]	'bread' (adj.);
ра́б [rap]	'slave',
but: ра́ба [ra`ba]	'woman slave'.

#### 2. [v] : [f]

The Bulgarian consonants [v] and [f], spelt with the letters *в* and *ф* are similar to English [v] and [f].

вратà [vra`ta]	'door'
фòрма [ˈforma]	'form', 'shape'
отва́рям [ot`varjam]	'to open'
фйгу́ра [ˈfigura]	'figure'
вя́ра [ˈvjara]	'belief', 'faith'
телефòн [tele`fon]	'telephone'

The consonant [v] is devoiced and pronounced as [f] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *в*.

любо́в [lju`bof]	'love'
but: любо́вен [lju`boven]	'love' (attr.)
кръ́в [krɐf]	'blood'
but: кръ́вен [ˈkrɐven]	'blood' (attr.)

гняв [gnɤaf]	'anger'
but: гнѣвно [ˈgnevno]	'angrily'
In Russian:	
любовь [ljuˈbofj]	'love'
but: любви [ljubˈvi]	'of love' (possessive, dative and prepositional cases);
кровь [krofj]	'blood'
but: крови [ˈkrovi]	'of blood'.

### 3. [g] : [k]

The Bulgarian consonants [g] and [k], spelt with the letters *г* and *к* are similar to English [g] and [k].

гара [ˈgara]	'railway station'
ръка [rɤˈka]	'hand', 'arm'
огън [ˈogɤn]	'fire'
кйно [ˈkino]	'cinema'
голям [goˈljɤm]	'big', 'large'
покрйвка [pokˈrifka]	'table-cloth, cover'

The consonant [g] is devoiced and pronounced as [k] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *г*.

сняг [snɤak]	'snow'
but: снеговѣ [sneɡoˈve]	'snows'
бряг [brɤak]	'coast'
but: бреговѣ [bregoˈve]	'coasts'
враг [vrɤak]	'enemy'
but: враговѣ [vragoˈve]	'enemies'

In Russian:

снег [snjek]	'snow'
but: снеги [sneˈgi]	'snows'
бѣрег [ˈbjerek]	'coast'
but: берега [bereˈga]	'coasts'
враг [vrak]	'enemy'
but: враги [vraˈgi]	'enemies'

### 4. [d] : [t]

The Bulgarian consonants [d] and [t], spelt with the letters *д* and *т* are dental, in marked contrast to the purely alveolar English consonants

[d] and [t] and are formed with the blade of the tongue placed against the front teeth.

давам [ˈdavam]	'to give'
там [tam]	'there'
бѣден [ˈbeden]	'poor'
кѣтка [ˈkotka]	'cat'
дружба [ˈdruʒba]	'friendship'
пет [pet]	'five'

The voiced consonant [d] is devoiced and pronounced as [t] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *д*.

град [ɡrat]	'city',
but: градовѣ [ɡradoˈve]	'cities'
глад [ɡlat]	'hunger'
but: глѣден [ˈɡladen]	'hungry'
зѣпад [ˈzapat]	'west'
but: зѣпаден [ˈzapaden]	'western'

In Russian:

гѣрод [ˈɡorat]	'city'
but: города [ɡɤraˈda]	'cities'
гѣлод [ˈɡolat]	'hunger'
but: голодный [ɡaˈlodnɤj]	'hungry'
зѣпад [ˈzapat]	
but: западный [ˈzapadnɤj]	'western'

### 5. [z1] : [л]

The Bulgarian consonants [z1], spelt *ж* and [л], spelt *л* are similar to English [z1] and [л] as in **pleasure** and **nation**, respectively.

живѣя [ʒiˈveja]	'to live'
шум [ʃum]	'noise'
снѣжен [ˈsneʒen]	'snow' (adj.)
шѣпот [ˈʃepot]	'whisper'
дѣже [ˈdɤʒe]	'even'
пиша [ˈpiʃa]	'to write'

The voiced consonant [z1] is devoiced and pronounced as [ʃ] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter *ж*.

нож [noʃ]	'knife'
but: ножѣве [noˈʒove]	'knives'



етаж [e`taʃ]	'floor', 'storey'
but: етажи [e`taʒi]	pl.
багаж [ba`gaʃ]	'luggage', 'baggage'
but: багажът [ba`gaʒət]	'the luggage'

In Russian:	
нож [noʃ]	'knife'
but: ножи [`noʒi]	'knives'

#### 6. [z] : [s]

The Bulgarian consonants [z] and [s], spelt with the letters з and с are similar to English [z] and [s].

задача [za`daʃa]	'task, 'problem'
само [`samo]	'only'
зима [`zima]	'winter'
седем [`sedem]	'seven'
празен [`prazen]	'empty'
лесен [`lesen]	'easy'

The voiced consonant [z] is devoiced and pronounced as [s] at the end of words but is spelt with the letter з.

мраз [mras]	'frost'
but: мразовит [mrazo`vit]	'frosty'
джаз [`dʒas]	'jazz'
but: джазов [`dʒazof]	'jazz' (attr.)
газ [gas]	'gas'
but: газове [`gazove]	'gases'

In Russian:	
мороз [ma`ros]	'frost'
but: мороза [mərə`za]	'frosts'

#### 7. [l]

In contrast to English [l], which is alveolar, the Bulgarian consonant [l], spelt with the letter л is dental and is formed with the tip of the tongue against the front teeth.

лак [lak]	'varnish'
лесен [`lesen]	'easy'
писател [pi`satel]	'writer'

#### 8. [m] and [n]

The Bulgarian consonants [m] and [n], spelt with the letters м and н are similar to English [m] and [n].

морè [mo`re]	'sea'
нов [nof]	'new'
много [`mnogo]	'a lot', 'much', 'many'
напред [na`pret]	'forward'
мèря [`merja]	'to measure'
песен [`pesen]	'song'

#### 9. [r]

The Bulgarian consonant [r], spelt with the letter р differs strongly from English [r] but is similar to some of its dialectal variants (e.g. Scottish rolled [r]). Bulgarian [r] is a rolled lingual sound (a trill) in which the tip of the tongue is made to vibrate.

радост [`radost]	'joy' (In Russian радость)
прòлет [`prolet]	'spring'
млекàр [mle`kar]	'milkman'

#### 10. [x]

The Bulgarian consonant [x], spelt with the letter х is quite different from English [h]. It is a voiceless velar fricative and is similar to Scottish [x] as in **loch**.

хòра [`hora]	'people'
стìхове [`stixove]	'verses'
прах [prax]	'dust'
In Russian: хорошò [xərə`ʃo]	

#### 11. [č]

The Bulgarian consonant [č], spelt with the letter ч is quite similar to but slightly duller in quality than English [č] as in **child**.

чакам [`čakam]	'to wait'
пазàч [pa`zač]	'guard'
пресèчка [pre`sečka]	'crossing'
In Russian: берèчь [be`rečj]	
'to keep, guard'	

## 12. [dʒ] : [Њ]

The Bulgarian consonant [dzl], spelt with the letters **дж** is similar to English [dʒ] as in **job, jazz**, etc. It occurs mainly in words of foreign origin.

джоб [dʒop]	'pocket'
дамаджана [dama`dʒana]	'demijohn'
джинси [`dʒinsi]	'a pair of jeans'

## 13. [c]

The Bulgarian consonant [c], spelt with the letter **ч** is similar to the final sound in English words such as **cats, beasts**, etc. In Bulgarian it occurs in initial, medial and final position.

целувам [ce`luvam]	'to kiss'
акция [`aksija]	'campaign'
подлец [pod`lec]	'villain', 'scoundrel'
In Russian: целый [`tseləj]	'whole'

## 14. [j]

Bulgarian [j] is similar to the English semi-vowel [j] as in **yes, buy**, etc.

a) At the end of a word or before a consonant [j] is spelt with the letter **й**.

трамвай [tram`vaj]	'tram', in Russian трамвай
май [maj]	'May'
край [kraj]	'end'
геройски [ge`rojski]	'bravely'

b) When it occurs before [a] the combination of [j] + [a] is spelt with the letter **я**.

ям [jam]	'to eat'
хляб [xljap]	'bread'
вятър [`vjatər]	'wind'
In Russian дядя [`djadja]	'uncle'

c) When it occurs before [u] the combination of [j] + [u] is spelt with the letter **ю**.

люляк [`ljuljak]	'lilac'
бюджет [bju`dʒet]	'budget'
тютюн [tju`tjun]	'tobacco'

In Russian любовь [lju`bof], Bulg. любов [lju`bof] 'love'

d) When it occurs before [o] the combination of [j] + [o] is spelt **йо** at the beginning of words and after vowels and **ьо** in final syllables and after consonants.

йога [`joga]	'yoga'
шофьор [šo`fjor]	'driver'
Йордан [jor`dan]	'Yordan'
Кòльо [`koljo]	'Kolyo'
Бългàрийо [bəl`garijo]	(vocative form)

In Russian the word for 'driver, chauffeur' is шофёр [ša`fjor].

e) Occasionally [j] may occur before [e], mainly in words and names of foreign origin. It is then spelt with the letter **й**.

йероглиф [jero`glif]	'hieroglyph'
йерàрхия [je`rarxija]	'hierarchy'
Йемен [`jemen]	'Yemen'

## Palatal consonants

### Палатални съгласни

Palatal consonants are an important characteristic feature of the Bulgarian consonantal system. They can be represented either as a combination of a consonant followed by an apostrophe (which stands for the soft sign) or as a combination of a consonant + [j] + [a], [u], [o] or [ə]. (The latter notation has been accepted in this textbook). Nearly all the consonants in Bulgarian have palatal counterparts before [a], [u], [o] and [ə]. Palatal consonants are distinctive in Bulgarian as can be seen by the different meanings of the word pairs:

бал [bal] 'ball'	:	бял [bjal] 'white'
гол [gol] 'naked'	:	гьол [gjol] 'puddle', 'pool'
лук [luk] 'onions'	:	люк [ljuk] 'man-hole'
луд [lut] 'mad'	:	лют [ljut] 'peppery, hot', 'pungent'
вървя [vəg`vjə]	:	'to walk'
сънят [sə`njət]	:	'the dream'

## Stress

### Ударение

The difference between stressed and unstressed syllables is much less pronounced in Bulgarian than in English. An English speaking learner



of Bulgarian may find it a little difficult to recognize the stressed syllables - at first glance all the syllables in an utterance may sound rather on the same level (to him/her).

While it is not easy but still possible to give some definite rules for the position of the stress in English words, Bulgarian word stress may fall on any syllable of a word.

It is dynamic, free and mobile.

Whereas in English words the stress most often falls on the first syllable, in Bulgarian as a whole it may fall on any syllable. In individual words, however, it is fixed.

#### Examples:

маса [ˈmasa] 'table' - stress on the first syllable

стенà [steˈna] 'wall' - stress on the second syllable

картина [karˈtina] 'picture' - stress on the second syllable

осъзнавам [osəzˈnavam] 'realize' - stress on the third syllable

активизирам [aktivɪˈziram] 'activate' - stress on the fourth syllable, etc.

In different forms of the same word the stress may shift from one syllable, to another:

град [grat] 'town': градът [graˈdət] 'the town': градовè [gradoˈve] 'towns'

диета [diˈeta] 'diet': диетичен [dieˈtičen] 'dietary'

Some pairs of words in Bulgarian (as well as in English) can be distinguished in meaning only by the position of the stress. In such cases the stress is indicated in Bulgarian printed material. Otherwise it is not usually indicated.

вълна [ˈvɔlna] 'wool' vs. вълнà [vɔlˈna] 'wave'(n.)

парì [ˈpari] 'vapours', 'steam' vs. парѝ [paˈri] 'money'

четè [čeˈte] 'he/she reads' - present tense form, 3rd person singular

чере [ˈčete] 'he/she read' - Aorist past tense form, 3rd person singular

Even in loanwords the stress is often changed and the position of the stress of the word in Bulgarian may differ from the word stress in the language, from which the word was borrowed:

тунèл [tuˈnel] vs. tunnel

бекòн [beˈkon] vs. bacon

Learners should try to memorize each new word with its individual stress.

There is an important group of one-syllable words which are never stressed in Bulgarian. They are pronounced together with the

preceding or following word, to which they are phonetically attached, although they are written as separate words. These words belong to the following categories:

a) prepositions

за къде [zakəˈde] 'where to'

на покрива [naˈpokriva] 'on the roof'

зад ъгъла [zadˈəgəla] 'round the corner'

под нулата [podˈnulata] 'under zero'

b) the negative particle не [ne] 'not'

не мога [neˈmoga] 'I cannot'

не искам [neˈiskam] 'I don't want'

c) the future tense auxiliary particle ще [šte]

ще вали [števaˈli] 'it will rain'

d) the interrogative particle ли [li]

ще дойдеш ли [šteˈdojdešli] 'will you come'

e) the conjunctions:

и [i] 'and'

но [no] 'but'

а [a] 'and', 'but'

че [če] 'that'

и тъй нататък [iˈtəjnaˈtatək] 'and so on'

"пътят е страшен, но славен" [ˈpəjtəte ˈstraʃen noˈslaven] 'the road is perilous but glorious'

f) the short forms of the dative and accusative personal pronouns,

e.g.:

кажи ми [kaˈžimi] 'tell me'

видях го [viˈdjaxgo] 'I saw him'

ще я покана [štejapoˈkanja] 'I will invite her'

But in negative forms of verbs these pronouns are stressed:

не го видях [neˈgo viˈdjax] 'I didn't see him'

не ми казвай [neˈmi ˈkazvaj] 'don't tell me'

g) the present tense forms of the auxiliary verb съм [səm] 'to be' are not stressed:

уморен съм [umoˈrensəm] 'I am tired'

уморен си [umoˈrensi] 'you are tired'

уморен е [umoˈrene] 'he is tired'

уморена е [umoˈrenaɐ] 'she is tired'

уморѐни сме [umo`renisme] 'we are tired'  
 уморѐни сте [umo`reniste] 'you are tired'  
 уморѐни са [umo`renisa] 'they are tired'

But in negative sentences the forms of *съм* are stressed:

не съм уморен [ne`sam umo`ren] 'I am not tired'  
 не си уморен [ne`si umo`ren] 'you are not tired'  
 не е уморен [ne`e umo`ren] 'he is not tired'

Some Bulgarian words have *double stress*. These are:

a) the comparative and superlative particles of adjectives and adverbs. The stress on the particle is stronger than the stress on the adjective or adverb:

по̀-хубав [po`xubaf] 'prettier'  
 най̀-хубав [naj`xubaf] 'prettiest'  
 по̀-гнѐвно [po`gnevno] 'more angrily'  
 най̀-гнѐвно [naj`gnevno] 'most angrily'

b) compound nouns with the prefixes *пра-* [pra], *сврѣх-* [svrɐx], *след-* [slet], *пред-* [pret]:

пра̀бѣлгарски [pra`bɛlgarski] 'proto-Bulgarian'  
 сврѣ̀хчовек [svrɐx`ɕo`vek] 'superman'  
 сле́двоѐнен [sle`dvo`enen] 'postwar'  
 пре́досвобо̀жденски [pre`dosvobo`z`den ski] 'preliberatory'  
 тѣ́мноси́н [tɛ`mno`sin] 'dark blue'  
 се́демстотин [se`dem`stotin] 'seven hundred'  
 ко̀нтра̀рево̀лю́ция [kon`trarevo`ljucija] 'counter-revolution'

There are also some words with two acceptable variants:

че́ло/чело̀ [ɕelo`ɕe`lo] 'forehead'  
 се́ло/село̀ [se`lo/se`lo] 'village'  
 ма́сло/масло̀ [maslo`mas`lo] 'butter'  
 ви́но/вино̀ [vi`no/vi`no] 'wine'

### Phonetic Alternations

#### Фонемни редувания

When two consonants stand together in a word or at word boundaries, one of them is affected by the other and becomes similar to it. This process is more active in Bulgarian than in English.

1. The second consonant affects the preceding one.

a) a voiceless consonant is voiced if it is before a voiced consonant.

Both are pronounced as voiced but the spelling is not changed:

сбор	[zbor] 'sum', 'total'
сгра̀да	[`zgrada] 'building'
отговаря̀м	[odgov`arjam] 'to answer'
отда̀вна	[od`davna] 'long ago'

In Russian:

екза́мен	[eg`zamen] 'exam'
----------	-------------------

b) a voiced consonant is devoiced if it is before a voiceless consonant. Both are pronounced as voiceless but the spelling is not changed:

ро̀бство	[`ropstvo] 'slavery'
вто̀рник	[`ftornik] 'Tuesday'
вчѐра	[`fɕera] 'yesterday'
по̀дпис	[`potpis] 'signature'
мѣ̀жки	[`mɛʂki] 'male'
и́сток	[`istok] 'East' (n.)

In Russian:

вчѐра	[fɕe`ra] 'yesterday'
вхо́дить	[fxa`ditj] 'to enter'

c) a voiceless consonant is not voiced before [v], [l], [m], [n], [r]:

све́ж	[sveʂ] 'fresh' (in Russian све́жий)
клас	[klas] 'class' (in Russian класс)
кни́га	[`kniga] 'book' (in Russian кни́га)
тре́ва	[tre`va] 'grass' (in Russian тра́ва)
сме́х	[smjax] 'laughter' (in Russian сме́х)
ка́кво	[kak`vo] 'what'
ква́ртира	[kvar`tira] 'rented place'

(in Russian кварта́ра 'flat')

This process is active at word boundaries, too.

Отту́к замина́ват пет̀ гру́пи.

[ot`tug zami`navat`ped`grupi]

'Five groups will be leaving from here.'

2. Voiced consonants are devoiced at the end of words (cf. pp. 10-11). This alteration is observed on the flow of speech even when the next word begins with a vowel or with the consonants [v], [l], [m], [n], [r], as well before the pause at the end of a sentence. The spelling of devoiced consonants does not change.



снѣг нѣма	[`snjak `njama] 'there is no snow'
град Рѣдомир	[`grat `radomir] 'the town of Radomir'
хубав мъж	[`xubaf mǝʃ] 'a handsome man'
млад лѣкар	[`mlat `lekar] 'a young doctor'
бърз влак	[`bǝrs `vlak] 'an express train'
хляб ѣмаме	[xljap `imame] 'we have some bread'
град Елѣна	[`grat e`lena] 'the town of Elena'
слаб успѣх	[`slap us`pex] 'poor results'

An exception to this rule is the pronunciation of prepositions. The final consonant of a preposition remains unchanged before words beginning with a vowel or with the consonant [v], [l], [m], [n], [r].

a) the final voiced consonants of prepositions remain voiced:

из ѹлиците	[iz`ulicite] 'about the streets'
без вѣра	[bez`vjara] 'without faith'
под липите	[podli`pite] 'under the lime trees'
без мѹзика	[bez`muzika] 'without music'
през нѣви	[prez`nivi] 'through fields'
без рѣд	[bez`ret] 'without order'

In Russian:

без ѳтдыха	[bez`otdǝxa] 'without a rest'
------------	-------------------------------

b) the final voiceless consonants of prepositions remain voiceless:

от рѣбота	[ot`rabota] 'from work'
от Вѣрна	[ot`varna] 'from Varna'
с мѣне	[`smene] 'with me'
с любѳв	[slju`bof] 'with love'

In Russian:

с ѹтра до вѣчера	[sut`ra] 'from morning till night'
------------------	------------------------------------

The preposition *с* [v] 'in/into' has a variant *въ* [vǝ] before words beginning with [v] or [f]:

във вагѳна	[vǝvva`gona] 'in the carriage'
във фѣлма	[vǝf`filma] 'in the film'

The preposition *с* [v] is devoiced and pronounced as [f] before words beginning with a vowel or with the consonants [l], [m], [n], [r]. In fact all the alterations of this preposition are as if it is *ѣ* but spelled as *с*:

в армѣята	[`farmijata] 'in the army'
в окѳто	[fo`koto] 'in the eye'
в лѳдката	[`flotkata] 'in the boat'

в магазѣна	[fmaga`zina] 'in the shop'
в небѳто	[fne`beto] 'in the sky'
в ресторѳнта	[fresto`ranta] 'in the restaurant'

In Russian this preposition in similar cases is pronounced as [v]:

в ѳрмии	[`varmii]
в ресторѳне	[vresto`rane]

The preposition *с* [s] 'with', 'by' has a variant *съ* [sǝ] before words beginning with [z] or [s]:

със заповѣд	[sǝz`zapovet] 'by order'
със сѣла	[sǝs`sila] 'by force'
със зѣвист	[sǝz`zavist] 'with envy'
със смѣх	[sǝs`smjax] 'with a laugh'

In Russian this preposition is always *с* (борѳться с зѣсухой 'to fight with the drought') with the exception of words beginning with *с*, *з* and forming a cluster of consonants. In such cases the preposition becomes *со*:

Как ѹ вас со здорѳвѣем? 'How are you with your health?'

### Alternation of [ja] and [e]

#### *Рѣдѹване на я и е*

In a number of words in Bulgarian [ja] alternates with [e] in related words (derived from the same root).

The sound [ja] occurs when it is in a stressed syllable, preceding a syllable with the vowels [a], [o], [u] in final position and when it is not followed by [ž], [č], [š]:

мѣрка	[`mjarka]	'measure'
млѣко	[`mljako]	'milk'
вѣтѣр	[`vjatǝr]	'wind'
пѣх	[pjax]	'I sang'
пѣ	[pja]	'he/she sang'

In all other cases [ja] alternates with [e]:

a) when there is [i] or [e] in the following syllable:

бѣл	[bjal]	'white'	бѣли	[`beli]	'white' (pl.)
цѣл	[cjal]	'whole'	цѣли	[`celi]	'whole' (pl.)
вѣра	[`vjara]	'faith'	вѣрен	[`veren]	'faithful'
голѣм	[go`ljam]	'big'	голѣми	[go`lemi]	'big' (pl.)

Exceptions are the forms of мѣнало свѣршѣно и мѣнало

несвършено време for the 1st and 2nd person plural: *вървяхме, вървяхте; живяхме, живяхте.*

b) when the stress shifts and the [ja]-syllable remains in unstressed position:

снѣг [snjak] 'snow'	снеговѣ [snego`ve] 'snows'
брѣг [brjak] 'shore'	бреговѣ [brego`ve] 'shores'
млѣко [mljako] 'milk'	млеко̀р [mle`kar] 'milkman'
мѣсто [mjasto] 'place'	мѣстѣ [me`sta] 'places'
вѣтр [vjatɐr] 'wind'	ветровѣ [vetro`ve] 'winds'

c) when the following syllable begins with [ž], [č], [š]:

грѣх [grjɐx] 'sin'	грѣшка [greška] 'mistake'
снѣг [snjak] 'snow'	снѣжна [snežna] 'snowy'
млѣко [mljako] 'milk'	млѣчна [mlečna] 'milky'

In all these cases in Russian the vowel is [e]:

снѣг 'snow', грѣх 'sin', вѣтер 'wind', мѣстѣ 'place', бѣрег 'coast', вѣра 'faith', цѣлый 'whole', бѣлый 'white', мѣра 'measure', пѣть 'to sing'.

#### Vowel - Zero alternation

The vowel [ə] and [e] are inserted in a large number of Bulgarian words to make the pronunciation easier, (similar to the insertion of [ə] in the English word *ladder*, Middle English *laddr*). The vowels are inserted between combinations of the consonants [v], [b], [g], [d], [z], etc. with the consonants [m], [n], [l], [r].

мѣтр [metɐr]	'metre'
тѣгр [tigɐr]	'tiger'
кѣсьм [kosɐm]	'a hair'
дѣн [den]	'day'
конѣц [ko`nec]	'thread'
петѣл [pe`tel]	'cock', 'rooster'

The vowel is preserved in the form with the article but dropped in the plural forms of the nouns.

мѣтр - мѣтрѣт [metɐrɐt]	'metre' - 'the metre'
мѣтри [metri]	'metres'
тѣгр - тѣгрѣт [tigɐrɐt]	'tiger' - 'the tiger'
тѣгри [tigrɪ]	'tigers'
кѣсьм - кѣсьмѣт [kosɐmɐt]	'a hair' - 'the hair'
кѣсми [kosmi]	'hairs'

дѣн - дѣнѣт [de`njɐt]	'day' - 'the day'
дни [dni]	'days'
конѣц - конѣцѣт [ko`necɐt]	'thread' - 'the thread'
конци [kon`ci]	'threads'
петѣл - петѣлѣт [pe`telɐt]	'cock, rooster' - 'the cock'
петли [pet`li]	'cocks'

The vowels [ə] and [e] alternate with zero in the forms of adjectives. The masculine singular forms contain a vowel which is left out in the feminine, neuter and plural forms. It is also dropped when the article is added to the masculine singular form of the adjectives.

добѣр студѣнт	[do`bɐr stu`dent] 'good student' (male)
добра студѣнтка	[do`bra stu`dentka] 'good student' (female)
добро здравѣ	[do`bro `zdrave] 'good health'
добрийѣт пѣвѣц	[do`brijɐt pe`vec] 'the good singer'
лѣсен урѣк	[`lesen u`rok] 'an easy lesson'
лѣсна задѣча	[`lesna za`dača] 'an easy problem'
лѣсно упражнѣние	[`lesno uprazl`nenie] 'an easy exercise'
лѣсни въпроси	[`lesni vɐp`rosi] 'easy questions'
най-лѣснийѣт урѣк	[`naj`lesnijɐt u`rok] 'the easiest lesson'

The [ə] sound in the Past Active Participles ending in -ѣл [əl] alternates with zero in the same way:

дошѣл	[do`šɐl] 'he has come'
дошла	[doš`la] 'she has come'
дошло	[doš`lo] 'it has come' (neut.)
дошли	[doš`li] 'they have come' (pl.)

#### Metathesis

##### Metameza

In a number of related words the vowel [ə] alternates and appears before or after the consonants [r] and [l] - [ɐr], [ɐl] or [rɐ], [lɐ].

a) in one-syllable words [ə] usually follows the consonants [r] and [l]:

врѣх [vrɐx]	'top'
грѣб [grɐp]	'back'
грѣд [grɐt]	'chest'
крѣв [krɐf]	'blood'



млѣк [mlək] 'shut up'

плѣх [pləx] 'rat'

Exceptions:

бѣрз [bərs] 'fast'

твѣрд [tvərt] 'hard'

вѣлк [vəlk] 'wolf'

жѣлт [zəlt] 'yellow'

b) in words with more than one syllable the position of [ə] depends on the number of consonants following [r] and [l].

If there is only one consonant following [r] and [l], then the combination [ər] and [əl] are used:

зѣрно [ˈzərnə] 'grain'

вѣрза [ˈvəzə] 'he/she tied'

дѣрво [dərˈvo] 'tree'

вѣртѣ [vərˈtʲə] 'to turn'

вѣрховѣ [vərˈxoˈve] 'tops'

дѣржѣ [dərˈʒə] 'to hold'

Exceptions:

грѣмогласен [grəmoˈglasen] 'loud', 'ringing'

плѣхове [ˈpləxove] 'rats'

If there is more than one consonant following [r], [l], then the combination [rə] and [lə] are used:

врѣзвам [ˈvrəzvəm] 'to tie'

дрѣвцѣ [drəˈfʲe] 'stick', 'a small tree'

грѣнчѣр [grənˈtʲər] 'potter'

зрѣнце [ˈzrənce] 'a small grain'

глѣтка [ˈglətkə] 'gulp'

млѣкна [ˈmləkna] 'he/she fell silent'

Exceptions:

мрѣсен [ˈmrəsən] 'dirty'

повѣрхност [poˈvərxnost] 'surface'

сълзлив [səlzlif] 'tearful', 'tear' (attr.)

In related with some of these words in Russian the combination of sounds is usually [-er-] and such metathesis (as in Bulgarian) doesn't occur:

дѣрево 'tree', верх 'top', вертѣть 'to turn', держать 'to hold',

повѣрхность 'surface'.

## Phonetic Alternations

In a number of words in Bulgarian the consonants [g], [x], [k] alternate with the consonants [ž], [š], [č] in the various forms of one and the same word or in related words derived from the same root.

мòра [ˈmoga] 'I can'

мòжеш [ˈmozleš] 'you can'

пекà [peˈkə] 'to bake'

печѣш [peˈčeš] 'you bake'

другàр [druˈgar] 'friend'

дружба [ˈdruzlba] 'friendship'

смѣх [smjəx] 'laughter'

смѣшен [ˈsmešen] 'funny'

тѣх [tix] 'quiet'

тишинà [tišiˈna] 'silence'

висòк [viˈsok] 'tall, high'

височинà [visočiˈna] 'height'.

In Russian there are similar alternations:

могù 'I can'

можешь 'you can'

пекù 'I bake'

печешь 'you bake'

друг 'friend'

дружба 'friendship'

смех 'laughter'

смешной 'funny'

тихий 'quiet'

тишина 'silence'

The consonants [g], [k], [x] as endings of masculine singular nouns alternate with [z], [c], [s] in the plural forms of the nouns:

пòдлог [ˈpodlok] 'subject'

пòдлоги [ˈpodlozi] 'subjects'

каталòг [kataˈlok] 'catalogue'

каталòзи [kataˈlozi] 'catalogues'

ученик [učeˈnik] 'schoolboy'

ученици [učeˈnici] 'schoolboys'

пràзник [ˈpraznik] 'holiday'

пràзници [ˈpraznici] 'holidays'

стомàх [stoˈmax] 'stomach'

стомàси [stoˈmasi] 'stomachs'

кожùх [koˈžux] 'fur coat'

кожùси [koˈžusi] 'fur coats'

Exceptions:

мйтинг [ˈmitink] 'rally/meeting'

мйтинги [ˈmitingi] 'meetings'

успèх [usˈpex] 'success'

успèхи [usˈpexi] 'successes' (pl.)

фойервèрк [ˈfojerverk] 'firework'

фойерверки [ˈfojerverki] 'fireworks' (pl.)

In Russian these consonants remain unchanged in the plural:

ученик 'schoolboy'

ученикì 'schoolboys'

мàльчик 'boy'

мàлчики 'boys'

монàх 'monk'

монàхи 'monks'

диалòг 'dialogue'

диалòги 'dialogues'

**Vowel alternation** occurs in some cognate words and in the different morphological forms of a number of words.

1. [o] \_\_ [a]

да отговòря [odgo`vorjə] 'to answer' (perfective aspect)

отговàрям [odgo`varjam] 'to answer' (imperfective)

да отвòря [ot`vorjə] 'to open' (perfective aspect)

отвàрям [ot`varjam] 'to open' (imperfective aspect)

да затвòря [zat`vorjə] 'to close' (perfective aspect)

затвàрям [zat`varjam] 'to close' (imperfective)

2. [e] \_\_ [a]

да изнесà [izne`sə] 'to take out' (perfective)

изнàсям [iz`nasjam] 'to take out' (imperfective)

да понесà [pone`sə] 'to endure' (perfective)

понàсям [[po`nasjam] 'to endure' [imperfective]

да донесà [done`sə] 'to bring' (perfective)

донàсям [do`nasjam] 'to bring' (imperfective)

3. [e] \_\_ [i]

метà [me`tə] 'to sweep'

измìтам [iz`mitam] 'to sweep away/off'

текà [te`kə] 'to flow, run'

изтйчам [is`tičam] 'to flow, run out'

да отвлекà [otvle`kə] 'to kidnap' (perfective)

отвлйчам [ot`vličam] 'to kidnap/carry off' (imperfective)

4. [e] \_\_ [o]

да внесà [vne`sə] 'to import'

внòс [vnos] 'import' (n.)

да принесà [prine`sə] 'to contribute'

прйнòс [`prinos] 'contribution'

берà [be`rə] 'to pick/gather'

сбòр [zbor] 'gathering', 'sum'; избòр [`izbor] 'choice'



## MORPHOLOGY МОРФОЛОГИЯ

### 1. NOUNS

#### Съществителни имена

According to their lexical meaning nouns are usually classified

into:

a) common nouns:

стол 'chair'	студент 'student'
улица 'street'	щастие 'happiness'
четене 'reading'	мъка 'sorrow'

b) proper nouns:

България 'Bulgaria'	Съфия 'Sofia'
Дунав 'the Danube river'	Рила 'the Rila mountain'
Петров 'Petrov'	Стойнови 'the Stoyanovs'

#### Gender Род

While in English most of the nouns have the same form for the masculine, feminine and neuter gender, in Bulgarian the gender of the nouns is morphologically indicated by the word ending.

a) Masculine nouns usually have a consonant ending:

град 'town'	път 'road'
писател 'writer'	обущар 'shoemaker'
пример 'example'	герой 'hero'

In Russian these words are also of masculine gender:

город, путь, писатель, сапожник, пример, герой.

Exceptions are certain nouns ending in -а, -я (the typical feminine gender markers), or in -о, -е, -и (the typical neuter gender markers), which denote persons of natural masculine sex:

баща 'father'	слуга 'servant'
роднина 'relative'	съдия 'judge'
пияница 'drunkard'	Сава 'Sava' (usu. a man's name)
юноша 'youth, adolescent'	
чичо 'uncle'	дядо 'grandfather/old man'

аташе 'ambassador/attache'	
Петко 'Petko'	
Кольо 'Kolyo'	
Георги 'Georgi'	

In Russian language there are similar exceptions (masculine nouns ending in a vowel):

папа 'daddy'	мужчина 'man'
юноша 'youth'	Алеша 'a man's name'
дядя 'uncle'	Костя 'a man's name'

b) Feminine nouns usually end in -а, -я:

ученичка 'schoolgirl'	чанта 'bag'
храна 'food'	вода 'water'
глава 'head'	книга 'book'
градина 'garden'	рокля 'dress'
спалня 'bedroom'	кухня 'kitchen'

In Russian similarly nouns ending in -а and -я are feminine:

ученица 'schoolgirl', сумка 'bag', кухня 'kitchen'

Exceptions in Bulgarian are some nouns with consonant endings and some abstract nouns:

радост 'joy'	скръб 'sorrow'
сутрин 'morning'	вечер 'evening'
сол 'salt'	нощ 'night'
есен 'autumn'	пролет 'spring'
кръв 'blood'	захар 'sugar'
власт 'power'	младост 'youth'

In Russian similar exceptions are (usually ending in a consonant + ь):

радость 'joy', скорбь 'sorrow', соль 'salt', ночь 'night', осень 'autumn', кровь 'blood', власть 'power', юность 'youth', etc.

c) Neuter nouns usually end in -о, -е:

чело 'forehead'	име 'name'
злато 'gold'	общежитие 'hostel'

In Russian: золото, общежитие 'gold' 'hostel'

Other common neuter endings are -и and -у, mostly in words of foreign origin:

такси 'taxi'	бижу 'piece of jewelry'
жури 'jury'	меню 'menu'

A large number of diminutive nouns also bear the neuter markers:

братче	'a small brother'
сестриче	'a small sister'

### Number Число

Both in Bulgarian and in English countable nouns have singular and plural forms. In contrast to English, however, Bulgarian has a variety of endings for the plural.

#### A. Masculine Nouns

Monosyllabic masculine nouns most frequently take the ending -ове [ove] to form plural forms:

стол	- столове	'chairs'
хляб	- хлябове	'loaves of bread'
град	- градове	'towns/cities'
цвет	- цветове	'colours'

Some nouns with homonymous singular forms have two different plural forms, which mark the difference in meaning:

клон	клонове	'fields/branches (of science)'
	клонни	'branches (of a tree)'
път	пъти	'times' (once, three times)
	пътища	'roads'

Monosyllabic masculine nouns which end in -й in the singular get the ending -еве [eve] for the plural:

бой	- боеве	'battles/fights'
строй	- строве	'systems/orders'

Some monosyllabic masculine nouns form plurals with the ending -и. They are usually masculine nouns denoting national origin as well as some other words.

чех	- чехи	'Czechs'
швед	- шведи	'Swedes'
грък	- гърци	'Greeks'
гост	- гости	'guests'

зъб	- зъби	'teeth'
филм	- филми	'films'

Only 5 monosyllabic masculine nouns form plurals with the ending -е:

мъж	- мъже	'men'
кон	- коне	'horses'
крал	- крале	'kings'
цар	- царе	'kings'
княз	- князе	'princes'

-а		
крак	- крака	'feet/legs'
рог	- рога	'horns'

-я		
брат	- братя	'brothers'

-ища		
сън	- сънища	'dreams'
път	- пътища	'roads', 'ways'

Polysyllabic masculine nouns generally take the ending -и in the plural:

булевард	- булевърди	'boulevards'
учител	- учители	'teachers'
преподавател	- преподаватели	'lecturers'
вестник	- вестници	'newspapers'
речник	- речници	'dictionaries'

When a polysyllabic masculine noun ends in -й it is replaced by -и in the plural:

герой	- герои	'heroes'
трамвай	- трамваи	'trams/streetcars'
славей	- славеи	'nightingales'

Polysyllabic masculine nouns ending in -а or -я get the ending -и in the plural:

баща	- бащи	'fathers'
роднина	- роднини	'relatives'
съдия	- съдий	'judges'

Polysyllabic masculine nouns with the ending -ин (usually denoting ethnic origin or occupation) drop the ending -ин and get the ending -и in the plural:



българин - българини	'Bulgarians'
селянин - селяни	'peasants'
гражданин - граждани	'citizens'

#### Notes:

a) Some polysyllabic words form the plural with the ending **-ове**:

вятър - ветрове	'winds'
огън - огньо̀ве	'fires'
цeнтър - ceнтрове	'centres'

b) In a number of nouns the vowels **-е-** and **-ъ-** from the final syllable of the singular forms are dropped in the plural:

прозорeц - прозорци	'windows'
дърводeлeц - дърводeлци	'carpenters'
тeатър - тeатри	'theatres'
литър - литри	'litres'

c) When there is a vowel preceding the ending **-ец** in the singular, the **-е-** of the ending is replaced by **-й-** [j] in the plural forms:

нигерйeц - нигерййци	'Nigerians'
кенйeц - кенййци	'Kenyans'
европeц - европeйци	'Europeans'

d) Nouns ending in **-к, -г, -х** in the singular are changed to **-ц, -з, -с** in the plural:

войник - войници	'soldiers'
рeчник - рeчници	'dictionaries'
каталoг - каталoзи	'catalogues'
бeлeг - бeлeзи	'scars'
стoмaх - стoмaси	'stomachs'
кoжyх - кoжyси	'fur coats'

In Russian the formation of plural of masculine nouns is different - they usually add the ending **-ы** or **-а**:

стол - столы 'tables'	yгoл - yглы 'corners'
глaз - глaзa 'eyes'	aдpeс - aдpeсa 'addresses'
гoрoд - гoрoдa 'towns'	вeчep - вeчepa 'evenings'

#### B. Feminine Nouns

The feminine plural ending is **-и**:

жeнa - жeни	'women'
бaня - бaни	'bathrooms'

aрмия - aрмии	'armies'
нощ - нощи	'nights'
бoлeст - бoлeсти	'diseases'

In Russian it is either **-ы** or **-и**:

жeщинa - жeщини	'women'
картинa - картини	'pictures'
линия - линии	'rulers'

Exceptions in Bulgarian:

ръкa - ръцe	'hands/arms'
овцa - овцe	'sheep'
свиня - свинe	'swines/pigs'

The vowels **-ъ-** and **-е-** in final syllables are sometimes dropped in the plural forms:

мисъл - мисли	'thoughts'
съблaзън - съблaзни	'temptations'
песен - пeсни	'songs'

#### C. Neuter nouns

Neuter nouns ending in **-о, -лю, -ало, -ило, -це, -енце, -ище** get the ending **-а** in the plural:

ceлo - ceлa	'villages'
eзepo - eзepa	'lakes'
oдeaлo - oдeaлa	'blankets'
кoрмилo - кoрмилa	'steering wheels'
cърцe - cърцa	'hearts'
мoмийчeнцe - мoмийчeнцa	'little girls'
училищe - училищa	'schools'

In Russian:

oкнo - oкнa	'windows'
пиcьмo - пиcьмa	'letters'

Neuter nouns ending in **-ие, -тие, -ние** get the ending **-я** in the plural:

ycлoвиe - ycлoвия	'conditions'
cъбитиe - cъбития	'events'
cъбpaниe - cъбpaния	'meetings'

In Russian - ycлoвиe - ycлoвия, coбытиe - coбытия, coбpaниe - coбpaния.

Neuter nouns ending in **-е, -че,** and **-не** as well as neuter nouns of

foreign origin ending in -и, -у, -ю get the ending -ета or -та in the plural:

пердѐ - пердѐта	'curtains'
морѐ - морѐта	'seas'
момѝче - момѝчета	'girls'
пѝле - пѝлета	'chickens'
таксѝ - таксѝта	'taxis'
меню - менюта	'menus'

In Russian these nouns get different endings - e.g. морѐ - морѝ, while borrowed words as пальтò, таксѝ are the same form in singular and in plural.

A number of neuter nouns ending in -ме get the suffix -ена in the plural. The stress on the final syllable of the plural forms:

ѝме - именà	'names'
врѐме - временà	'times'
сѐме - семенà	'seeds'
плѐме - племенà	'tribes'

In Russian there is a group of similar nouns:

ѝмя - именà, врѐмя - временà, сѐмя - семенà, плѐмя - племенà.

#### Exceptions in Bulgarian:

окò - очѝ	'eyes'
ухò - ушѝ	'ears'
живòтно - живòтни	'animals'
насекòмо - насеко̀ми	'insects'
чùдо - чудеса̀	'miracles'
детѐ - деца̀	'children'
цвѐте - цветѝ	'flowers'
ра̀мо - раменà	'shoulders'
коля̀но - коленà	'knees'

#### D. Singularia tantum

There are a lot of nouns in Bulgaria which normally occur only in the singular:

abstract nouns	
патриотѝзъм	'patriotism'
идеализъм	'idealism'
лю̀бòв	'love'

дѐтство	'childhood'
names of substances or mass nouns:	
кислорòд	'oxygen'
възду̀х	'air'
олòво	'lead'
орѝз	'rice'
сòл	'salt'
горчѝца	'mustard'

#### E. Pluralia tantum

Nouns which occur only in the plural usually denote objects which consist of two equivalent parts:

очилà	'spectacles'
клѐщи	'pliers'
везнѝ	'scales'

Some collective mass nouns also occur only in the plural:

макарòни	'macaroni'
въглища̀	'coals'
разно̀ски	'expenses'

#### F. The 'Count' Plural

Masculine nouns have a special 'count' form ending in -а or -я, which is used after cardinal numerals два, три, сто (two, three, a hundred, etc.) and the words колко (how many/how much), няколко 'some/several', толкова 'so/that many/that much':

Singular	Plural	'Count' Plural	
град	градо̀ве	два̀ гра̀да	'two cities'
сла̀вей	сла̀вени	трѝ сла̀вея	'three nightingales'
слон	сло̀нове	пет̀ сло̀на	'five elephants'
стол	сто̀лове	ня̀колко сто̀ла	'several chairs'
мо̀лив	мо̀ливи	ко̀лко мо̀лива	'how many pencils'
The vowels [a] and [e] in final syllables are preserved in the 'count' forms:			
Singular	Plural	'Count' Plural	
позòрец	про̀зорци	чѐтири про̀зореца̀	'four windows'
венѐц	венѝ	ня̀колко венѐца̀	'several wreathes'
ко̀сьм	ко̀сми	два̀ ко̀сьма	'two hairs'
òгън	огньòве	трѝ òгъ̀ня	'three fires'



театър	театри	колко театъра	'how many theatres'
<b>Exceptions:</b>			
мѣтър	мѣтри	дѣсет мѣтра	'ten metres'
литър	литри	сѣдем литра	'seven litres'
киломѣтър	киломѣтри	колко киломѣтра	'how many kilometres'

In Russian Genitive case is used for counting masculine nouns - from 1 to 4 - singular form, and from 5 on - plural form:

час 'an hour'	два часа	пять часов '5 hours'
рубль 'a ruble'	два рубля	пять рублей '5 rubles'

### G. The Votive

The vocative forms are used in direct address.

1) The endings **-е, -о, -ю** are added to masculine nouns:

Иван	Иване	'Ivan'
сын	сыне	'my son'
гражданин	гражданино	'citizen'
приятел	приятелю	'my friend'

Examples:

Иване, ще дойдеш ли	'Ivan, are you coming
с нас на кино?	to the cinema with us?'
Сине, сбогом и пази се!	'Farewell, my son and
	take care!'

2) The ending **-о** is added to feminine nouns:

майка	майко	'mother'
родина	родино	'motherland'

Examples:

"О, майко моя,	'Oh, mother mine,
родино мила,	Dear land of my birth,
защо тъй жално,	Why do you cry so bitterly,
тъй мило плачеш?	dismally?'

/Христо Ботев/  
(Hristo Botev, Translated by  
Peter Tempest)

Neuter and plural nouns have no vocative forms.

There are no vocative forms in Russian language.

### Determination of Nouns

#### Членуване на съществителните имена

In contrast to English which has a definite and an indefinite article, the Bulgarian language has only a definite article. The article is part of the word and is always placed at the end. It is added to nouns or attributes qualifying nouns. Both in English and in Bulgarian the definite article co-occurs with noun phrases when they refer to things that have been mentioned before.

In Russian there is no definite article and other means of the language are used for the idea of defining - cases, word order, context, lexical means, the aspect of verbs, etc.

The forms of the article in Bulgarian are different for the three genders of the nouns and for the plural forms.

столът	the chair	сѣлото	the village
масата	the table	градовѣте	the towns

#### A. Forms of the Definite Article for Masculine Nouns

Masculine nouns have a full and a short form of the definite article depending on the syntactic function of the Noun Phrase. The full form is used when a noun phrase functions as a Subject or Predicative and the short form is used for the rest of the syntactic functions.

Full forms: **-ът [ət]** or **-ят [jət]**

Short forms: **-а [ə]** or **-я [jə]**

a) Nouns ending in a consonant most frequently get the forms **-ът** and **-а**:

Noun	Full form	Short form
стол	столът	стола 'the chair'
зѣб	зѣбът	зѣба 'the tooth'
сняг	снегът	снерà 'the snow'

b) Nouns formed with the suffixes **-ap** or **-тел** usually denoting persons, get the article forms **-ят** and **-я**:

Noun	Full form	Short form	
секретар	секретарят	секретаря	'the secretary'
преподавател	преподавателят	преподавателя	'the lecturer'
писател	писателят	писателя	'the writer'

c) The same forms (-ят and -я) are added to nouns ending in -й and to 10 exceptions to the general rule.

Noun	Full form	Short form	
герòй	герòят	герòя	'the hero'
трамвàй	трамвàят	трамвàя	'the tram'
дèн	деня̀т	деня̀	'the day'
зèт	зетя̀т	зетя̀	'the son-in-law'
кòн	кòнят	кòня	'the horse'
крàл	крàлят	крàля	'the king'
нòкът	нòкътят	нòкътя	'the (finger)nail'
лàкът	лàкътят	лàкътя	'the elbow'
òгън	òгънят	òгъня	'the fire'
път	пътят	пътя	'the road/way'
сън	сънят	съня	'the dream'
цàр	цàрят	цàря	'the tzar'

#### Exceptions:

d) Masculine nouns ending in -а or -я get the article form -та (for feminine nouns):

колèга	колèгата	'the colleague'
съдия	съдията	'the judge'

Masculine nouns ending in -о or -е get the article form -то (for neuter gender):

дядо	дядото	'the grandfather'
крупиѐ	крупиѐто	'the croupier'
конферансиѐ	конферансиѐто	'the announcer'

e) Masculine nouns preserve the vowel [ə], spelt -ъ- when the definite article is added:

Noun	Full form	Short form	
вя̀тър	вя̀търът	вя̀тѐра	'the wind'
кòсьм	кòсьмът	кòсьма	'the hair'
теàтър	теàтърът	теàтѐра	'the theatre'
мèтър	мèтърът	мèтѐра	'the metre'

Exceptions are nouns of foreign origin with the suffixes -изъм or -азъм:

Noun	Full form	Short form	
патриотизъм	патриотизмът	патриотизма	'the patriotism'
ентусиа̀зм	ентусиа̀змът	ентусиа̀зма	'the enthusiasm'

## B. The Definite Article for Feminine Nouns

All feminine nouns get the article -та in the singular:

водà	водàта	'the water'
ста̀я	ста̀ята	'the room'
но̀щ	но̀щта	'the night'

When the article is added to feminine nouns ending in -т the letter т is doubled:

прòлет	пролеттà	'the spring'
ста̀рост	старосттà	'the old age'

## C. The Definite Article for Neuter Nouns

All neuter nouns get the article -то in the singular:

лѐг̀ло	лѐг̀лото	'the bed'
морè	морèто	'the sea'
таксì	таксìто	'the taxi'

## D. The Definite Article for the Plural

The forms of the article depend on the final vowel of the plural noun forms and that could be called vocal harmony.

a) The nouns ending in -е or -и in the plural get the article -те:

Singular	Plural	Plural + Article	
стòл	стòлове	стòловете	'the chairs'
кня̀з	кня̀зе	кня̀зете	'the prices'
звùк	звùци	звùците	'the sounds'
борбà	борбì	борбìте	'the struggles'

b) The nouns ending in -а or -я in the plural get the article -та:

Singular	Plural	Plural + Article	
път	п̀тища	п̀тищата	'the roads'
брат	братя	братята	'the brothers'
дѐтè	дѐца	дѐцата	'the children'
пìле	пìлета	пìлетата	'the chickens'



## USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

### Употреба на определителния член

1. The definite article is added to nouns when they are in **Subject** position. (When the noun in Subject position has been mentioned before and is known to the speaker and to the listener.)

Note: Masculine nouns in Subject position get the full form of the article **-ът** or **-ят**.

Преподавателят влезе в стаята.	'The lecturer entered the room.'
Преподавателят беше болен.	'The lecturer was ill.'
Резултатът ще бъде добър.	'The result will be good.'
Книгата не е интересна.	'The book is not interesting.'
Кафето е готово.	'The coffee is ready.'
Магазините са вече затворени.	'The shops are already closed.'
Трудни ли са упражненията в учебника?	'Are the exercises in the textbook difficult?'

The definite article is often added to nouns in Subject position when they co-occur with the verbs **съм** 'to be', **наричам се**, **казвам се** 'to be called', **изглеждам** 'seem/appear', **оказвам се** 'turn out to be', etc.

#### Examples:

Българите са гостоприемни.	'The Bulgarians are hospitable.'
Преподавателката се казва Мария Пенева	'The lecturer is called Maria Peneva.'
Курортът се нарича Пампорово.	'The resort is called Pamporovo.'
Упражнението ми изглежда трудно.	'The exercise seems difficult to me.'
Задачите се оказаха доста лесни.	'The problems have turned out to be quite easy.'

2. The definite article is added to nouns when they are in **Object** position. (The aspect of the verb affects the use of the definite article in Object position - more often the perfective aspect will require nouns with the definite article, and imperfective aspect verbs - nouns with no article).

Note: Masculine nouns in Object position get the short form of the article **-а** or **-я**.

#### Examples:

Пиша писмо (статия).	'I am writing a letter (a paper).'
Написах вече писмото (статията).	'I've already finished the letter (the paper).'
Обичам да ям зеленчуци.	'I like eating vegetables.'
Изядохте ли хляба, месото и зеленчуците?	'Have you eaten up the bread, the meat and the vegetables?'

The definite article is usually added to nouns used after prepositions as adverbials.

#### Examples:

Столът в ъгъла е счупен.	'The chair in the corner is broken.'
Когà ще тръгнеш за гарата?	'When are you leaving for the station?'
Защо не седнеш до прозореца?	'Why don't you sit by the window?'
Подължих да пуша въпреки забраната на лекарите.	'I haven't given up smoking in spite of doctors' orders.'
Според правилника на страната, на шофьорите се забранява употребата на алкохол.	'According to the traffic laws of the country drivers are not allowed to use any alcohol.'

3. The article is not added to nouns in the following cases:

a) when the nouns co-occur with the impersonal verbs **има** 'there is/there are', **няма** 'there isn't/there aren't', provided the Object is not doubled by a personal pronoun (This rule applies to English language, too).

#### Examples:

Има ли захар в чая?	'Is there any sugar in the tea?'
Няма време.	'There is no time.'
Няма ли пликосе и картички в пощата?	'Aren't there any envelopes and postcards at the postoffice?'
Няма ли го още новото списание?	'Hasn't the new magazine been delivered yet?'

In the last example the object is doubled and the definite article is added.

b) The article is not added to nouns like **дъжд** 'rain', **сняг** 'snow', **град** 'hail', **роса** 'dew', etc., when they combine with verbs like **вали** (it rains/snows/hails, etc.) **ръмй** (it drizzles) etc.

Вали сняг. 'It's snowing.'  
 Ще вали порѝден дѣжд. 'Heavy showers are expected.'

c) In most cases the article is not added to nouns derived from numerals when they are in Object position.

Приятелката ми получи 'My girlfriend got a poor mark  
 двѝйка на изпита. (a two) at the exam.'

d) Some nouns which occur in prepositional phrases or in phraseological units (idioms, proverbs and sayings) are used without an article.

Examples:

От трѝн та на глѝг. 'Out of the frying-pan - into the fire.'  
 Приятелите ми влязоха 'My friends engaged in an argument.'  
 в спѝр.

Намѝрах се в затруднѝние, 'I was in a difficult position  
 но не изпѝднах в отчѝйние. but I did not despair.'

e) Usually the article is not added to nouns used in most cases after the preposition без 'without', с/със 'with/by', по 'on/in/about'.

Examples:

Направѝх контрѝлното без 'I have no (a lot of)  
 грѝшки (с много грѝшки). mistakes in my test.'  
 ѝскам да си кѝпя 'I'd like to buy the text book  
 учебника по електрѝника. on electronics.'

When the same preposition shows relations in space the noun is used with the definite article.

Вървя по ѝлицата. 'I'm walking along the street.'

f) The article is not added to the second noun in phrases like:

бутѝлка вино 'a bottle of wine'  
 пакѝт бисквѝти 'a packet of biscuits'  
 куѝя кибрѝт 'a box of matches'

g) The article is not added to proper nouns and to nouns denoting titles, scientific degrees or kinship relations:

дѝктор Сокѝлов 'Doctor Sokolov'  
 профѝсор Рѝдев 'Professor Radev'  
 генерѝл Займов 'General Zaimov'  
 чѝчо Стѝфан 'Uncle Stephen'  
 лѝля Нѝдка 'Aunt Nadka'

h) The article is not added to nouns which combine with proper

nouns of the following type:

град Бургѝс	'the town of Bourgas'
сѝло Ковачѝвци	'the village of Kovachevtsi'
река Дунав	'the Danube river'
ѝлица "Вѝтоша"	'Vitosha Street'
булевѝрд "Рѝски"	'Rouski boulevard'
кино "Сердика"	'the Serdika cinema'
ресторѝнт "Златна рибка"	'the 'Zlatna Ribka' restaurant'
вѝстник "Трѝд"	'the 'Trud' newspaper'

but:

пустѝнята Сахѝра	'the Sahara desert'
ѝзерото Виктория	'the lake Victoria'
ѝперата "Аѝда"	'the opera Aida'
фѝлмѝт "Кабарѝ"	'the film Cabaret'
ромѝнѝт "Ѡливѝр Туйст"	'the novel Oliver Twist'
пиѝсата "Ѡтѝло"	'the play Othello'

i) The article is not added to nouns with adverbial function used with the preposition на 'on/at/to'

Мѝйка ми е на рѝбота.	'My mother is at work.'
Отѝвам на учѝлище.	'I'm going to school. (because I am a student there)'
Ще хѝдя на теѝтър.	'I'll go to the theatre. (to see a play)'

The article is added, however, when the nouns are used in prepositional phrases with the preposition в/вѝв 'in/into' and denote concrete destinations:

Отѝвам в теѝтъра.	'I'm going into the theatre.'
	(I work there)

j) The article is not added to verbal nouns formed with the suffix -не, functioning as time adverbials:

Ще се отбѝя у вас на врѝщане.	'I'll call on you on my way back.'
Трѝгнахме на разсѝмване.	'We started at dawn.'

k) The article is not added to nouns combined with the prepositions без, в, на, по, чрез, до, около, за, от, functioning as adverbials of manner, quality, extend, purpose, motive, etc.

Examples:

Студѝнтѝт гѝвѝри бѝлгарски	'The student speaks Bulgarian'
----------------------------	--------------------------------



без грешки.

Хората се движеха

на групи.

Постигнали са тези успехи

чрез труд и постоянство.

Найдох се до насита.

Върнахме се за вечеря.

Спряхме край реката

на почивка.

Девойката плачеше

от радост.

When generalizing in the singular in both languages (English and Bulgarian) the definite article is added:

Конят е интелигентно животно.

without any mistakes.'

'People were moving about

in groups.'

'They've achieved their success

through hard work and persistence.'

'I've eaten my fill.'

'We came back for

supper.'

'We stopped by the river to

take a rest.'

'The young girl was weeping

for joy.'

'The horse is an intelligent

animal'

But in the plural in Bulgarian the article is added while in English the idea of generalization is conveyed with no article.

Конете са интелигентни животни

Мъжете харесват жени с

минало, а жените - мъже

с бъдеще.

'Horses are intelligent animals.'

'Men like women with past

and women like men with

future.' (Oscar Wilde)

## FORMATION OF NOUNS

### ОБРАЗУВАНЕ НА

### СЪЩЕСТВИТЕЛНИТЕ ИМЕНА

#### A. Suffixation

Bulgarian nouns are formed mainly by suffixation - that is by adding various suffixes to verbs, nouns and adverbs.

#### Masculine Nouns

1) The suffix **-ач** is added to verbal bases to form Agent and Instrument nouns. The suffix is highly productive and always stressed.

бръсна	'to shave'	:	бръснач	'razor'
играя	'to play'	:	играч	'player'
продавам	'to sell'	:	продавач	'shop-assistant'
водя	'to lead'	:	водач	'leader/guide'

2) The suffix **-ар** is added to verbal and nominal bases to form Agent nouns which denote professions. It is generally stressed.

пекя	'to bake'	:	пекар	'baker'
бръсна	'to shave'	:	бръснар	'barber'
мляко	'milk'	:	млекоар	'milkman'
риба	'fish'	:	рибар	'fisherman'

3) The suffix **-тел** is added to verbal bases (usually to the Aorist verb stem) to form Agent nouns. The stress is usually on the syllable before the suffix **-тел**.

уча	'to study'	:	учих 'I studied'	:	учител 'teacher'
пиша	'to write'	:	писах 'I wrote'	:	писател 'writer'
говоря	'to speak'	:	говорих 'I spoke'	:	говорител 'speaker'
спася	'to save'	:	спасих 'I saved'	:	спасител 'rescuer life-guard'

This suffix is productive in Russian, too: учитель 'teacher', писатель 'writer', слушатель 'listener', любитель 'amateur', читатель 'reader'.

4) The suffix **-ник** is added to adjectives, past passive participle and noun bases to form Agent nouns and nouns denoting objects and places:

пратен	'sent'	:	пратеник	'messenger'
завист	'envy'	:	завистник	'envious man'
работа	'word'	:	работник	'worker/labourer'
пепел	'ashes'	:	пепелник	'ash-tray'

хлад	'coolness'	:	хладилник	'refrigerator'
мръсен	'dirty'	:	мръсник	'mean person, scoundrel'

Examples in Russian: спътник 'satellite', защитник 'defender', ученик 'schoolboy', помощник 'someone who helps', художник 'artist, painter'.

5) The suffix **-ец** is added to verbal, nominal and adjectival bases to form Agent nouns. It is extremely productive. There is also **-анец** and **-янец**.

летя	'to fly'	:	летец	'pilot'
ловя	'to hunt'	:	ловец	'hunter'
мъдър	'wise'	:	мъдрец	'wise man'
страхлив	'cowardly'	:	страхливец	'coward'
София	'Sofia'	:	софиянец	'citizen of Sofia'

Европа	'Europe'	:	европеец	'European'
Япония	'Japan'	:	японец	'Japanese'
Америка	'America'	:	американец	'American'

In Russian this suffix is productive, too: украинец 'Ukrainian', иностра́нец 'foreigner', аме́риканец 'American', испа́нец 'Spaniard', япо́нец 'Japanese'.

6) The suffix **-ин** (**-анин**, **-янин**, **-чанин**) is added to nominal bases to form personal (proper) nouns denoting place of origin.

България	'Bulgaria'	:	българин	'Bulgarian'
Турция	'Turkey'	:	турчин	'Turk'
Англия	'England'	:	англичанин	'Englishman'
Лондон	'London'	:	лондончанин	'Londoner'
град	'city'	:	гражданин	'citizen'
село	'village'	:	селянин	'villager, peasant'

Some examples from Russian: гражда́нин 'citizen', крестя́нин 'villager, peasant', англича́нин 'Englishman', египтя́нин 'Egyptian'.

7) The suffix **-ец** is added to form diminutive masculine nouns.

вятър	'wind'	:	ветре́ц	'slight wind'
дъжд	'rain'	:	дъжде́ц	'slight rain'
сняг	'snow'	:	снеже́ц	'slight snow'

The correspondent suffixes in Russian are **-ок** and **-ик**:  
ветеро́к 'slight wind, дожди́к 'slight rain'.

## 8) Suffixes of Latin origin:

### a) **-ант**, **-ент**:

стажа́нт	'trainee'
лабора́нт	'laboratory assistant'
студе́нт	'student'
пацие́нт	'patient'
асисте́нт	'assistant (professor)'

### b) **-ор** (**-тор**):

профе́сор	'professor'	инспе́ктор	'inspector'
дире́ктор	'director'	дикта́тор	'dictator'
а́втор	'author'	компози́тор	'composer'

In Russian: а́втор 'author', дире́ктор 'director', архите́ктор 'architect', компози́тор 'composer', консерва́тор '(member of the) conservative (party)'.  
с) **-ик**:

математи́к	'mathematician'
физи́к	'physicist'
хими́к	'chemist'
полити́к	'politician', 'statesman'

In Russian with a stress on the vowel before this suffix: математи́к, физи́к, хими́к, полити́к.

### d) **-ист**:

журнали́ст	'journalist'
специали́ст	'specialist'
ради́ст	'radio operator'
спортис́т	'sportsman'

In Russian: журнали́ст, специали́ст, ради́ст.

## Feminine Nouns

1. The most frequently used suffix which forms feminine nouns out of masculine ones is **-ка**:

готва́ч	- готва́чка	'cook' (female)
млека́р	- млека́рка	'milkwoman'
студе́нт	- студе́нтка	'student' (female)
дире́ктор	- дире́кторка	'directress'
учите́л	- учите́лка	'teacher' (female)

The correspondent suffixes in Russian are **-ница**, **-ца**:



учитель - учительница	'teacher (female)',
писатель - писательница	'writer (female)',
ученик - ученица	'schoolgirl',
художник - художница	'artist, painter (female).'

The suffix **-ин** of some masculine nouns is replaced by the suffix **-ка**:

българин - българка	'Bulgarian woman'
селянин - селянка	'peasant woman'

In Russian the suffix is the same: болгарка, крестьянка.

2. The suffix **-ния** is added to masculine nouns to form feminine nouns usually denoting nationality or position. This suffix is typically Bulgarian:

поляк	'Pole'	полякния	'Polish woman'
грък	'Greek'	гръкния	'Greek woman'
турчин	'Turk'	туркия	'Turkish woman'
слуга	'servant'	служия	'servant-girl'
домакин	'host'	домакия	'hostess', 'housewife'

3. The suffix **-ница** is added to noun and adjective bases to form nouns denoting objects and location:

сол	'salt'	солница	'saltcellar'
годеник	'fiance'	годеница	'fiancee'
книга	'book'	книжарница	'bookshop'
болен	'ill/sick'	болница	'hospital'

4. The suffix **-алня, -илня** is added to verb bases to form nouns denoting locality:

спя	'to sleep'	спалня	'bedroom'
чета	'to read'	читалня	'reading-room'
суша	'to dry'	сушилня	'airing cupboard, drying-room'

5. The suffix **-ина** is added to adjective bases to form abstract nouns, denoting quality:

топъл	'warm'	топлина	'warmth'
дълъг	'long'	дължина	'length'
широк	'wide'	широчина	'width' (as measurement)

добър	'good'	добрина	'goodness', 'kindness'
-------	--------	---------	------------------------

When the same adjective bases are used and the suffix **-ота** is added there is a slight difference in meaning - adjectives with **-ота** mean quality

of the character:

доброта	'goodness of character'
широтa	'generosity of character'

6. The suffix **-ост** is added to adjective bases to form abstract nouns usually denoting quality:

горд	'proud'	гордост	'pride'
смел	'brave, courageous'	смелост	'courage'
млад	'young'	младост	'youth'
стар	'old'	старост	'old age'
хубав	'beautiful'	хубост	'beauty'

Examples of the same suffix in Russian: гордость 'pride', смелость 'courage', юность 'youth'.

7. The suffix **-(и)лка** is added to verbal bases to form nouns denoting objects:

закачам	'to hang up'	закчалка	'hang'(n.), 'hat and coat rack'
тегля	'to weigh'	тегилка	'scales'
остря	'to sharpen'	острилка	'pencil-sharpener'
тупам	'to beat'	тупалка	'carpet-beater'

8. The suffix **-а** is added to verbs to form nouns denoting resultative action:

моля	'to ask'	молба	'request'
дружа	'be friend with'	дружба	'friendship'
сея	'to sow'	сейтба	'sowing'
кося	'to mow'	коситба	'hay-making', 'mowing'
вършя	'to thresh'	вършитба	'threshing'

In Russian: свадьба, мольба, дружба.

10. The suffix **-ница** forms nouns with emotive meaning which denote a constant and intensive repetition of the action. They are used in colloquial speech.

блъскам	'to jostle'	блъсканица	'hustle and bustle'
карам се	'to quarrel'	караница	'quarrel', 'brawl'
гоня	'to chase'	гоненица	'chase'

11. The suffixes which form **diminutive** feminine nouns are: **-ка, -ичка, -ица**:

книга	'book'	книжка	'booklet'
чаша	'cup'	чашка	'small cup'
сестра	'sister'	сестричка	'little sister'





b) adjectives of relation.

Qualitative adjectives denote properties of the nouns which they modify. Only qualitative adjectives with some exception allow degrees of comparison.

### Gender of Adjectives Род на прилагателните имена

#### 1. Masculine

Most frequently masculine singular adjectives end in a consonant:

златен пръстен	'a gold ring'
голям град	'a big city'
мирен договор	'a peace treaty'
щастлив край	'a happy end'
горещ пясък	'hot sand'
син балон	'a blue balloon'

Some masculine adjectives end in *-u* in the singular:

медицински преглед	'a medical check-up'
български език	'(the) Bulgarian language'

In Russian masculine adjectives end in *-ый* (новый 'new'), *-ий* (русский 'Russian', хороший 'nice', синий 'blue'), *-ой* (большой 'big').

#### 2. Feminine

Feminine adjectives are formed by adding the endings *-а* or *-я* to masculine ones:

голяма къща	'a large house'
щастлива случайност	'a lucky chance'
синя топка	'a blue ball'
златна мина	'a gold mine'
гореща вълна	'a heat wave'

The *-u* ending of masculine adjectives is replaced by the ending *-а*:

лекарска помощ	'medical assistance'
горска нимфа	'a wood-nymph'
градска градина	'public garden'

In Russian feminine adjectives end in *-ая*, *-ья*: новая 'new', русская 'Russian', большая 'big', хорошая 'nice', синяя 'blue'.

#### 3. Neuter

Neuter adjectives are formed by adding the endings *-о*, *-ь* or *-е* to

masculine ones:

голямо семейство	'a large family'
синьо небе	'blue sky'
овче сирене	'sheep's milk cheese'
краве масло	'butter' (made of cow's milk)

The *-u* ending of masculine adjectives is replaced by the ending *-о*:

горско богатство	'timber resources'
градско население	'urban population'

In Russian neuter gender adjectives end in *-ое*, *-ее*: новое 'new', русское 'Russian', большое 'big', хорошее 'nice', синее 'blue'.

### Plural of Adjectives

#### Множественно число на прилагателните имена

1. The plural of adjectives is formed by adding the ending *-и* to the masculine singular form:

големи градове/къщи/семейства	'big cities/houses/families'
сини балони/топки/небеса	'blue balloons/balls/skies'

Note: The [ja] of singular adjectives is changed into [e] in plural:

ляв завой	:	леви завой	'left turns/curves'
бял стих	:	бели стихове	'blank verse'

2. Inserted [ə] or [e] in masculine adjectives is omitted in the feminine, neuter and plural forms:

добър урок	'a good lesson'
добра памет	'a good memory'
добро здраве	'good health'
добри намерения	'good intentions'
работен ден	'working day/hours'
работна сила	'manpower'
работно облекло	'workclothes'
работни дрехи	'workclothes'

3. The *-е* of masculine adjectives ending in *-ен* preceded by a vowel is changed into *-ий* in the feminine, neuter and plural forms:

боден вик	'a war cry'
бодна линия	'a fighting line'
бодно поле	'a battle-field'
бодни действия	'military operations'
ненадѐн гост	'an unexpected visitor'

ненадѣйна визита	'a surprise visit'
ненадѣйно щастие	'unexpected luck'
ненадѣйни успѣхи	'unexpected success'
but: чаѣн 'of tea'	чаѣна лъжичка 'teaspoon'

4. The [e] of masculine adjectives ending in **-нен** is omitted in the feminine, neuter and plural forms. They are spelt with **-ни**:

ѣсенен дѣн	'an autumn day'
ѣсенна сеитба	'autumn sowing'
ѣсенно врѣме	'autumn weather'
ѣсенни листа	'autumn leaves'

BUT NOTE:

вѣлнен плѣт	'woolen cloth'
вѣлнена рѣкля	'a woolen dress'
вѣлнено трикѣ	'wool jersey'
вѣлнени дрѣхи	'woolen clothes'

In Russian the plural of adjectives is formed with endings **-ые**, **-ие**: нѣвые 'new', рѣсские 'Russian', хорѣшие 'nice', большіе 'big', сѣніе 'blue'.

### The Use of the Definite Article with Adjectives

#### Членуване на прилагателните имена

Adjectives receive the definite article when they occur in noun phrases, which contain a definite noun. The definite article of the noun is transferred to the adjective. If there is more than one adjective in a noun phrase, the article is added only to the first one.

Студѣнтката дойдѣ наврѣме тѣзи сѣтрин.	'The student came on time this morning.'
Нѣвата студѣнтка дойдѣ наврѣме тѣзи сѣтрин.	'The new student came on time this morning.'
Нѣшата нѣва студѣнтка дойдѣ наврѣме тѣзи сѣтрин.	'Our new student came on time this morning.'

In Russian there is no definite article - neither with nouns nor with adjectives.

#### 1. Masculine

When an adjective modifies a masculine noun it receives either the

full or the short form of the definite article depending on the syntactic position of the noun phrase. The full form is used when a noun phrase functions as a Subject or Predicative of a sentence, and the short form is used for the rest of the syntactic functions.

full forms		short forms	
-ият		-ия	
[-ят]		[-я]	
хѣбав	хѣбавият	хѣбавия	'the nice/beautiful'
Хѣбавият климат ще ви се отразѣ добрѣ на здравѣто.		'The nice climate will be good for your health. (will do you good).'	
Бѣх очарѣван от хѣбавия пейзаж.		'I was fascinated by the beautiful scenery.'	
вѣрен вѣрния		верния 'correct/right/true'	
Тѣва ли ѣ вѣрния отговор?		'Is that the correct answer?'	
Кѣй полѣчи вѣрния отговор?		'Who has got the correct answer?'	
бѣл	бѣлият	бѣлия	'the white'
мѣлѣк	мѣлкият	мѣлкия	'the small/little'
ѣсенен	ѣсенният	ѣсенния	'the autumn/autumnal'
градски	градският	градския	'the urban/city' (attr.)

	Feminine	Neuter	Plural	
	+ та	+ то	+ те	
хѣбав	хѣбавата	хѣбавото	хѣбавите	'nice'
бѣл	бѣлата	бѣлото	бѣлите	'white'
мѣлѣк	мѣлката	мѣлкото	мѣлките	'small'
бѣден	бѣдната	бѣдното	бѣдните	'poor'
ѣсенен	ѣсенната	ѣсенното	ѣсенните	'autumnal'
градски	градската	градското	градските	'urban'

When a noun is modified by two or more adjectives the article is added only to the first adjective in the noun phrase:

Дѣлгите и трѣдни нѣви дѣми трѣбва да се повтѣрят на глас.	'The long and difficult words should be repeated aloud.'
---	--

However, when the adjectives, modifying a noun denote different notions, the article is added to each of the adjectives in the Noun Phrase:

Щѣ посѣщѣвам кѣрса и през	'I'll be attending the course'
---------------------------	--------------------------------



лѣтнія, и през зѣмнія се-  
мѣстѣръ.

both in the summer and in the  
winter semesters.'

### Degrees of Comparison

#### Степени на сравнение

Only descriptive qualitative adjectives allow degrees of comparison - (since their meaning is compatible with the idea of gradation of quality). The degrees of comparison are formed by adding the preposed particle *по-* (for the comparative degree) and *най-* (for the superlative degree) to the basic form of the adjective (with or without the article). This is similar to the analytic way of forming the degrees of comparison in English by means of **more** and **most**.

#### a) The Positive Degree

Този урѣк е трѣден. 'This lesson is difficult.'

#### b) The Comparative Degree

Този урѣк е по-трѣден от  
предѣшния. 'This lesson is more difficult  
than the previous one.'

#### c) The Superlative Degree

Като че ли това е най-  
трѣдният урѣк досега. 'That lesson seems to be the  
most difficult lesson so far.'

The particles *по-* and *най-* are separated from the adjective with a hyphen and are always stressed.

When the object of comparison is a noun it is introduced by the preposition *от* 'than' and when it is a Clause it is introduced by *отколкуто*:

Петър е по-умен *от* Марѣя. 'Peter is more intelligent  
than Maria.'

Сегѣ тя е по-внимѣтелна,  
*отколкуто* бѣше, предѣ да  
се запознае с вас. 'Now she is more careful than  
she was before she had met  
you.'

In Russian there are two ways of forming comparative and superlative degrees:

#### a) simple (unchangeable):

Этот город красивее того. 'This city is more beautiful  
than that one.'

Эта река красивее той. 'This river is more beautiful  
than that one.'

Это озеро красивее того. 'This lake is more beautiful

than that one.'

Эти горы красивее тех.

'These mountains are more  
beautiful than those.'

#### b) compound (changeable):

Positive degree:	Comparative degree:	Superlative degree:
красивый город	бѣлее красивый	самый красивый
красивая река	бѣлее красивая	самая красивая
красивое озеро	бѣлее красивое	самое красивое
красивые горы	бѣлее красивые	самые красивые

The object of comparison is introduced with no preposition and the noun is in genitive case (or with the preposition *чем* and the noun is in nominative case).

Слон бѣльше и сильнѣе собаки.

'The elephant is bigger  
and stronger than the  
dog.'

Слон бѣльше и сильнѣе чем  
собака.

In the superlative degree the objects of comparison are introduced with the preposition *из*:

Рѣза - самый красивый цве-  
ток из всех цветѣвъ.

'The rose is the most beau-  
tiful of all flowers.'

### Formation of Adjectives

#### Образуване на прилагателни имена

#### A. Suffixation

Adjectives in Bulgarian are formed mainly by derivation - that is by adding various suffixes (more rarely prefixes) to nouns, verbs and other adjectives.

#### 1. Formation of Qualitative Adjectives:

##### a) from nouns

suffix -ен:			
стѣд	'cold' (n.)	студѣн	'cold'
чѣдо	'wonder'	чѣден	'wonderful'
вѣля	'will/willpower'	вѣлен	'free, unrestrained'
ѣм	'mind, intelligence'	ѣмен	'intelligent/clever'

In Russian the corresponding suffix is -н: зѣмний 'winter', лѣтний 'summer', народный 'national'.

suffix **-овен, -евен:**

дъжд 'rain'	дъждо <b>вен</b>	'rainy'
грѣх 'sin'	грѣхо <b>вен</b>	'sinful'
дух 'spirit'	духо <b>вен</b>	'spiritual, mental'
душѣ 'soul'	душе <b>вен</b>	'spiritual, mental'

The correspondent suffix in Russian is **-овн-, -евн-:** грѣховный, духовный, душевный.

suffix **-овит:**

вѣтръ 'wind'	ветро <b>вит</b>	'windy'
плодъ 'fruit'	плодо <b>вит</b>	'fruitful, fertile'
духъ 'spirit'	духов <b>ит</b>	'witty'

suffix **-лив:**

сънъ 'sleep' (n.)	сънл <b>ив</b>	'sleepy'
работѣ 'work' (n.)	работл <b>ив</b>	'industrious'
мързѣл 'laziness'	мързел <b>ив</b>	'lazy'
память 'memory'	памятл <b>ив</b>	'with a good memory'
щастіе 'happiness'	щастл <b>ив</b>	'happy'
талантъ 'talant'	талантл <b>ив</b>	'talanted'

The same suffix in Russian is in adjectives as счастливый 'happy', талантливый 'talanted'.

suffix **-ест:**

сѣнка 'shade'	сѣнч <b>ест</b>	'shady'
зѣрно 'grain'	зѣрн <b>ест</b>	'grainy'

suffix **-ист:**

тревѣ 'grass'	трев <b>ист</b>	'grassy'
камень 'stone'	камен <b>ист</b>	'stony'

In Russian: зернистый 'grainy', каменистый 'stony'.

suffix **-ат:**

брада 'beard'	брад <b>ат</b>	'bearded'
крыла 'wings'	крил <b>ат</b>	'winged'
зѣбъ 'tooth'	зѣб <b>ат</b>	'large-toothed,

(fig.) sharp tongued'

In Russian: бородатый, крылатый, зубастый.

suffix **-ав, -яв**

дѣхъ 'breath, scent'	дѣха <b>в</b>	'fragrant'
пепелъ 'ashes'	пепел <b>яв</b>	'ash-coloured'
кѣстенъ 'chestnut'	кестен <b>яв</b>	'chestnut, auburn'

b) from verbs

suffixes **-ав, -ив, -лив, -елив, -телен:**

хлѣзгам се 'to slip'	хлѣзг <b>ав</b>	'slippery'
бѣбря 'to chatter'	бѣбр <b>ив</b>	'talkative'
чѣпя 'to break'	чѣпл <b>ив</b>	'breakable, fragile'
пестѣ 'to economize'	пестел <b>ив</b>	'thrifty, economical'
внимѣвам 'to take care'	внимѣтел <b>ен</b>	'careful, attentive'

In Russian: бережливый 'thrifty, economical', внимательный 'attentive', замѣчательный 'outstanding', отрицательный 'negative'.

c) from other adjectives

suffix **-ав:**

болѣнъ 'sick, ill'	болн <b>ав</b>	'sicky, frail'
дрѣбенъ 'small, tiny'	дрѣбн <b>ав</b>	'petty, mean'

suffix **-оват:**

слабъ 'weak, thin, slight'	слабо <b>ват</b>	'weakly, poor' (fig.)
глупавъ 'stupid'	глупо <b>ват</b>	'silly, sheepish, doltish'

## 2. Formation of Relational Adjectives

a) from nouns

suffix **-ов, (-ев).** The suffix is extremely productive and is added to proper and common nouns to form possessive and other kinds of relational adjectives, as well as family names.

братъ 'brother'	брат <b>ов</b>	'brother's'
чичо 'uncle'	чичо <b>в</b>	'uncle's'
слѣнце 'sun'	слѣнч <b>ев</b>	'sunny'
шоколадъ 'chocolate'	шоколад <b>ов</b>	'chocolate' (attr.)
малина 'raspberry'	малино <b>в</b>	'raspberry' (attr.)
Пѣтеръ 'Peter'	Петр <b>ов</b>	'Petrov' (lit. of Peter)

This suffix is very productive and is used to form Bulgarian surnames - Иванов, Димитров, Николаев (masculine), Иванова, Димитрова, Николаева (feminine).

In Russian: сосновъ 'of pine', мехово́й 'of leather', Смирно́в 'family name Smirnoff'.

suffix **-ски.** The suffix is very productive and is added to common and proper nouns.



град	'city'	градски	'urban, city' (attr.)
дете	'child'	детски	'children's'
жена	'woman'	женски	'woman's, female'
София	'Sofia'	софийски	'of Sofia'
Лондон	'London'	лондонски	'London(attr) of London'
Африка	'Africa'	африкански	'African'

In Russian: женский 'woman's, female', русский 'Russian', московский 'of Moscow'.

suffix **-ески**. In the process of derivation with this suffix some changes take place:

[g] is changed into [ž]:

враг	'enemy'	вражески	'enemy'(attr.), 'hostile'
------	---------	----------	---------------------------

In Russian: вражеский

[k] is changed into [č]:

ученик	'pupil, schoolboy'	ученически	'pupil's'
--------	--------------------	------------	-----------

In Russian: технический 'technical'

[x] is changed into [š]:

монах	'monk'	монашески	'monastic'
-------	--------	-----------	------------

In Russian: монашеский.

suffix **-ешки**:

баба	'old woman, grandmother'	бабешки	'old woman's'
пиле	'chicken'	пилешки	'chicken' (attr.)

The suffixes **-ен** and **-ов** are added to common nouns.

suffix **-ен**:

народ	'people'	народен	'people's'
държава	'state'	държавен	'state' (attr.)
чай	'tea'	чаен	'tea' (attr.)
желязо	'iron'	железен	'iron' (attr.)
злато	'gold'	златен	'golden, gold' (attr.)

suffix **-ов**:

група	'group'	групов	'group' (attr.)
смысл	'meaning'	смыслов	'meaningful'
бор	'pine-tree'	боров	'pine' (attr.)

In Russian: групповой, смысловой, сосновый.

b) from verbs

suffix **-ителен, -ателен**:

да разхлада	'to cool'	разхладителен	'cooling'
-------------	-----------	---------------	-----------

да измеря	'to measure'	измерителен	'measuring'
да накажа	'to punish'	наказателен	'punitive'
наказах	'I punished'		
състезавам се	'to compete'	състезателен	'competitive'

suffix **-илен, -ален**:

да родя	'to give birth to'	родилен	'maternity' (attr.)
играя	'to play'	игрален	'playing'
спя	'to sleep'	спален	'sleeping'

In Russian: освежительный 'refreshing', сострадательный 'sympathetic', родительный 'maternity, genitive (case)'.  
c) from adverbs of place and time

suffix **-шен**:

утре	'tomorrow'	утрешен	'tomorrow's'
днес	'today'	днешен	'today's'
сега	'now'	сегашен	'present-day, current'
тук(а)	'here'	тукашен	'local, of this place'

In Russian: завтрашний 'tomorrow's', сегодняшний 'today's', нынешний 'present-day, current', сдешний 'local, of this place'.

There are quite a number of adjectives of foreign origin:

актуален	'topical, current'
дисциплинарен	'disciplinary'
обективен	'objective'
революционен	'revolutionary'
национален	'national'
гениален	'of genius'

In Russian: гениальный, национальный.

suffixes **-ичен** and **-ически**. These suffixes are also used to derive adjectives from nouns of foreign origin. The suffix **-ичен** usually derives qualitative adjectives and the suffix **-ически** - relational adjectives. The two adjectives derived from the same noun can most frequently be used as synonyms but sometimes they are not interchangeable.

алгебричен/алгебрически	'algebraic'
астрономичен/астрономически	'astronomic(al)'

but:

лирично	настроение	'lyrical mood'
лирически	стихотворение	'lyric poem'
икономичен	живот	'frugal life'

икономически институт

'Institute of Economics'

In Russian: экономичный 'frugal', экономический 'of economics', археологический 'archaeological', биологический 'biological', геологический 'geological', демократический 'democratic', исторический 'historical', математический 'mathematical', технический 'technical', физический 'physical'.

### B. Compound Adjectives

a) with the linking vowels [o] or [e]:

русо̀кòс 'fair-haired, blond'

далеко̀глед 'far-sighted'

светло̀син 'light blue'

земѐдѣлски 'agricultural'

конѐвѣден 'horse-breeding'

In Russian:

общеизвѣстный 'famous', сельскохозяйственный 'agricultural'.

b) without a linking vowel. These compounds are usually (but not always) spelt with a hyphen:

бѣлгаро-английски рѣчник 'a Bulgarian-English dictionary'

историко-филологически факултет 'faculty of history and philology'

наро̀довла̀стен

'of people's power'

In Russian:

ру̀сско-английский словарь 'Russian-English dictionary'

англо-ру̀сский словарь 'English-Russian dictionary'

## III. NUMERALS

### Числителни имена

Numerals fall into two groups: cardinal numerals and ordinal numerals.

### A. Cardinal Numerals

#### Бройни числителни

The cardinal numerals in Bulgarian represent a decimal system. The numeral един 'one' is an adjective and has a masculine, a feminine and a neuter form:

**masculine**

едѣн стòл 'one chair'

**feminine**

една̀ маса 'one table'

**neuter**

едно̀ легло̀ 'one bed'

The numeral два/две 'two' has two forms: one for masculine and another one for feminine and neuter.

**masculine** два̀ стòла 'two chairs'

**feminine**

двѐ маси 'two tables'

**and neuter**

двѐ легла̀ 'two beds'

The other numerals are not inflected for gender and number.

Some cardinal numbers (from 2 to 6) have special forms, with which they combine with personal masculine nouns.

1	едѣн стòл/мѣж	'one chair/man'
	една̀ кнѣга/дево̀йка	'one book/girl'
	едно̀ легло̀/детѣ	'one bed/child'
2	два̀ стòла/два̀ма мѣжѣ	'two chairs/two men'
	двѐ кнѣги/дево̀йки/	'two books/girls/'
	легла̀/деца̀	'beds/children'
3	три стòла/кнѣги/	'three chairs/books/'
	дево̀йки/легла̀/деца̀	'girls/beds/children'
	трѝма мѣжѣ/ду̀ши	'three men'
4	чѣтири стòла/кнѣги/	'four chairs/books/'
	дево̀йки/легла̀/деца̀	'girls/beds/children'
	чѣтирѝма мѣжѣ/ду̀ши	'four men'
5	пет стòла/кнѣги/	'five chairs/books/'
	дево̀йки/легла̀/деца̀	'girls/beds/children'
	петѝма мѣжѣ	'five men'



6	шест стòла/кнйги/ девòйки/легла/деца шестйма мъже	'six chairs/books/ girls/beds/children' 'six men'
---	---	---

From number 7 on the numerals have the same form for all the genders (people and things).

7	сèдем мъже/стòла/кнйги/девòйки/легла/деца 'seven men/chairs/books/girls/beds/children'
---	---

When we count without adding nouns, we say the neuter gender forms of the numerals 1 and 2. But in Russian the masculine forms are used.

	Bulgarian	Russian
1	еднò	один
2	двè	два
3	трй	три
4	чèтири	чètйре
5	пèт	пять
6	шèст	шесть
7	сèдем	семь
8	òсем	вòсемь
9	дèвет	дèвять
10	дèсет	дèсять
11	единадесет /единайсет	одиннадцать
12	дванадесет /дванайсет	двенадцать
13	тринадесет /тринайсет	тринадцать
14	четиринадесет /четиринайсет	четырнадцать
15	петнадесет /петнайсет	пятнадцать
16	шестнадесет /шестнайсет	шестнадцать
17	седемнадесет /седемнайсет	семнадцать
18	осемнадесет /осемнайсет	восемнадцать
19	деветнадесет /деветнайсет	девятнадцать
20	двадесет /двайсет	двадцать
21	двадесет и еднò	двадцать один
22	двадесет и двè	двадцать два
23	двадесет и трй	двадцать три
.		
.		
29	двадесет и дèвет	двадцать дèвять

30	трйдесет /трййсет	трйдцать
31	трйдесет и еднò	трйдцать один
.		
39	трйдесет и дèвет	трйдцать дèвять
40	чètйридесет /чètйрийсет	сòрок
50	петдесèt	пятьдесят
60	шестдесèt	шестьдесят
70	седемдесèt	семьдесят
80	осемдесèt	восемьдесят
90	деветдесèt	девяносто
100	стò	сто
105	стò и пèт	сто пять
157	стò петдесèt и сèдем	сто пятьдесят семь
200	двèста	двèсти
300	трйста	трйста
400	чètйристотин	чètйреста
500	пèтстотин	пятьсòт
600	шèстстотин	шестьсòт
700	сèдемстотин	семьсòт
800	òсемстотин	восемьсòт
900	дèветстотин	девятьсòт
1000	хилйада	тйсяча
1288	хилйада двèста осемдесèt и òсем	тйсяча двèсти восемь- десят вòсемь
2000	двè хйляди	две тйсячи
.		
1 000 000	едйн милион	миллион
2 000 000	двa милиона	два миллиона
1 000 000 000	едйн милиард	миллиард
2 000 000 000	двa милиарда	два миллиарда

The cardinal numerals хилйада 'thousand', милион 'million' and милиард 'milliard' behave as nouns. They have plural forms.

хилйада	двè (трй, пèт, òсем) хйляди
'one thousand'	'two (three, five, eight) thousand'
милион	дèсет милиона    мнòго милиони
'one million'	'ten million'    'many millions'

милиàрд	двà милиàрда	мнòго милиàрди
'one milliard'	'two milliard'	'many millions'

The rest of the cardinal numerals are complex: they are combinations of two or more simple and compound numerals. The conjunction *и* is placed before the last component (while in Russian numerals there is no conjunction). E.g. (Bulg.):

24	два̀десет (два̀йсет) и четири
57	петдесет и седем
186	стò осемдесет и шест
215	двèста и петна̀десет (петна̀йсет)
1544	хил`яда петстотин четиридесет и четири

With long numbers in each group of three there should be one *и*:

238 525 301 499	двèста тридесет и òсем милиàрда, петстотин два̀десет и пет милиòна, триста и една̀ хил`яда, четиристотин деветдесет и дèвет
-----------------	--

### Cardinal Numerals and the Definite Article

Cardinal numerals are frequently used with the definite article. The article is added according to the rules for adjectives. With Russian numerals there is no definite article.

Masculine Singular	Feminine Singular	Neuter Singular
един - ѐдиният	една̀ - една̀та	едно̀ - едно̀то
		'the one'

#### Plural

еднѝ - еднѝте	'the ones'
-----------------	------------

The form of the definite article for numerals ending in *-a* is *-ma*.

двà: двàта стола до прозòреца	'the two chairs by the window'
двàма: двамàта писàтели от САЩ	'the two writers from the USA'
трѝма: трѝмата бра̀тя	'the three brothers'
трѝста: трѝстата лева, които	'the three hundred leva'
ми дèлжиш	'you owe me'

The form of the definite article for numerals ending in a consonant, *-e* or *-u* is *-me*:

двè: двèте прия̀тели	'the two girlfriends'
трѝ: трѝте почѝвни днѝ	'the three days off'
пèт: пèттè из̀пита	'the five exams'

стò: стотè стрàници	'the three hundred pages'
---------------------	---------------------------

The stress is on the article *-me* when it is added to numerals:

дèсет: десеттè дър̀жави	'the ten states'
пèтстотин: петстотинтè лева̀	'the five hundred leva'

**Exceptions:** (the stress does not change)

двè: двèте ста̀и	'the two rooms'
трѝ: трѝте сгра̀ди	'the three buildings'

The numerals 'million' and 'milliard' are treated as masculine nouns and get the forms *-m*, *-a* in the singular and the form *-me* in the plural:

милиòн:	милиòнът/милиòна	'the million'
	милиòните	'the millions'
милиàрд:	милиàрдът/милиàрда	'the milliard'
	милиàрдите	'the milliards'

The numeral хил`яда 'thousand' is a feminine noun, so the definite article for singular will be *-ma*, and for plural *-me*:

хил`яда:	хил`ядата	'the thousand'
	хил`ядите (with changed stress)	'the thousands'

**Note:** Masculine nouns (meaning things) have special form when used after all cardinal numerals except един 'one':

два̀ мо̀лива	'two pencils'
пèт стòла	'five chairs'
дèсет прозòреца	'ten windows'

This form coincides with the Russian genitive case of singular masculine nouns after numerals 2, 3, 4 - два̀ карандашà, трѝ столà, четы̀ре студèнта, and from 5 on the nouns are genitive case plural - пять карандашèй.

In Bulgarian masculine nouns denoting people, all feminine and neuter gender nouns (denoting people and things) are used with their plural forms when they occur after cardinal numerals:

дèсет студèнти	'ten students' (masculine, plural)
пèт студèнтки	'five students' (feminine, plural)
двè ста̀и	'two rooms' (feminine, plural)
трѝ деца̀	'three children' (neuter, plural)
едина̀йсет легла̀	'eleven beds' (neuter, plural)



## Ordinal Numerals *Редни числителни*

The ordinal numerals are adjectives. They have varying forms for masculine, feminine, neuter and plural.

Ordinal numerals are formed from cardinal numerals by adding the suffix *-u* (for masculine singular and for the plural form), the suffix *-a* for the feminine and *-o* for the neuter forms. The numerals *първи*, *втори*, *трети* and *четвърти* (1st, 2nd, 3rd and 4th) differ from the respective cardinal numerals (they are suppletive).

Masc.sing.	Fem.sing.	Neut.sing.	Plural	
първи (пръв)	първа	първо	първи	1st
втори	втора	второ	втори	2nd
трети	трета	трето	трети	3rd
четвърти	четвърта	четвърто	четвърти	4th
пети	пета	пето	пети	5th
шести	шеста	шесто	шести	6th
седми	седма	седмо	седми	7th
осми	осма	осмо	осми	8th
девети	девета	девето	девети	9th
десети	десета	десето	десети	10th
двадесети	двадесета	двадесето	двадесети	20th
(двайсети)				
тридесети	тридесета	тридесето	тридесети	30th
(трийсети)				
четиридесети	четиридесета	четиридесето	четиридесети	40th
(четирийсети)				
деветдесети	деветдесета	деветдесето	деветдесети	90th
стотен	стотна	стотно	стотни	100th
шестотен	шестотна	шестотно	шестотни	600th
хиляден	хилядна	хилядно	хилядни	1000th
милионен	милионна	милионно	милионни	millionth
милиарден	милиардна	милиардно	милиардни	milliardth

(The forms in brackets are spoken variants).

Compound ordinals are formed from corresponding compound cardinals in which only the final component is ordinal:

- 44 четиридесет и четири: четиридесет и четвърти 44th  
 55 петдесет и пет: петдесет и пети 55th  
 1998 - хиляда деветстотин деветдесет и осма година 'the year 1998th'  
 2001 - две хиляди и първа година

In contrast to English, the years are expressed with ordinal numerals (feminine) in Bulgarian. There is certain similarity in expressing dates but the ordinals do not take the definite article in Bulgarian:

десети септември, хиляда девет- 'September 10th 1999'  
 стотин деветдесет и девета година

трети март, хиляда осемстотин 'March 3rd 1878'  
 седемдесет и осма година

Centuries are expressed similarly, but again in Bulgarian the ordinal numeral does not usually take the definite article and is of masculine gender.

девети век '9th century'

двадесети (двайсети) век '20th century'

двадесет (двайсет) и първи век '21st century'

There is some difference in the way pages, chapters, parts of books, etc. are designated:

сто и първа страница 'page 101'

седма глава 'chapter 7'

първа част 'part one'

Първата световна война 'World War I'

цар Борис Втори 'Tsar Boris II'

Russian ordinal numbers are quite similar to the Bulgarian ones.

Masc.sing.	Fem.sing.	Neut.sing.	Plural	
первый	первая	первое	первые	1st
второй	вторая	второе	вторые	2nd
третий	третья	третье	третье	3rd
четвёртый	четвёртая	четвёртое	четвёртые	4th
пятый	пятая	пятое	пятые	5th
шестой	шестая	шестое	шестые	6th

The dates in Russian are formed as follows:

Сегодня двадцать первое июля тысяча девятьсот девяносто восьмого года - 'Today is 21st of July 1998'.

## Fractions

### Дроби

The formation of fractional numbers in Bulgarian is similar to English. The numerator is a cardinal numeral and the denominator is an ordinal one.

една пета	'1/5'
две трети	'2/3'
три четвърти	'3/4'
седем двадесети (двайсети)	'7/20'
една стотна	'1/100'
един процент	ог едно на сто '1%'
петдесет процента	ог петдесет на сто '50%'
една втора, половин, половина	'1/2, half'

The numeral *половин* 'half' is used only before nouns:

половин килограм ябълки 'half a kilo of apples'

On the other hand, *половина* 'a half' is used after nouns or other numerals:

месец и половина	'a month and a half'
Часът е седем и половина.	'It's half past seven.'
една трета, третина	'1/3'
една четвърт, четвъртина, четвърт	'1/4'

The numeral *четвърт* 'quarter' is used before a noun and/or after a noun and another numeral.

четвърт сирене	'a quarter (of a kilo) of cheese'
килограм и четвърт	'a kilo and a quarter'
Часът е девет и четвърт.	'It's quarter past nine.'

In Russian fractions are formed quite similarly:

одна пята (часть)	1/5
две пьятых (части)	2/5
три пьятых	3/5
половина	1/2
треть	1/3
четверть	1/4

## Decimal Numbers

### Десетични дроби

In Bulgarian: (*цяло* means 'whole number' as opposed to 'fraction')

нула цяло и пет (десети)	0.5
едно цяло и три стотни	1.03
две цяло и двадесет и пет (стотни)	2.25
две цяло и десет (стотни)	2.10
три цяло и шестдесет (шейсет) и пет (стотни)	3.65

In Russian:

ноль целых, пять десятых	0.5
одна целая, три сотых	1.03
две целых, двадцать пять сотых	2.25

## Ordinal Numerals and the Definite Article

The forms of the definite article are added to ordinal numerals according to the rules for adjectives.

Masc.sing.	Fem.sing.	Neut.sing.	Plural
-ят[я],-	ият[ия] -та	-то	-те
първият	първата	първото	първите
(първия) 'the 1st'			
вторият	втората	второто	вторите
(втория) 'the 2nd'			
четвъртият	четвъртата	четвъртото	четвъртите
(четвъртия) 'the 4th'			
седмият	седмата	седмото	седмите
(седмия) 'the 7th'			
стотният	стотната	стотното	стотните
(стотния) 'the 100th'			
хилядният	хилядната	хилядното	хилядните
(хилядният) 'the 1000th'			

The definite article is added only to the last component of complex ordinal numerals:

шестстотин петдесет и седмият (седмия) 'the 657th'

In Russian language there is no definite article.



### Formation of Nouns from Cardinal Numerals

The suffixes *-ица*, *-(ор)ка*, *-ойка* derive nouns from cardinal numerals:

едѝн : единѝца	'one'(n.) 'unit'
двѝ : двѝйка	'a two, a couple'
трѝ : трѝйка	'a three'
чѝтири : четвѝрка	'a four'
пѝт : петѝрка, петѝца	'a five'
шѝст : шестѝрка, шестѝца	'a six'
сѝдем : седмѝрка, седмѝца	'a seven'
ѝсем : осмѝрка, осмѝца	'a eight'
дѝвет : девѝтка, девѝтка, девѝтка	'a nine'
дѝсет : десѝтка, десѝтка, десѝтка	'a ten'
единадѝсет : единадѝсетѝрка (единадѝсетѝрка)	'an eleven'
двадѝсет : двадѝсетѝрка (двадѝсетѝрка), двадѝсетѝца (двадѝсетѝца)	'a twenty'
стѝ : стѝтица	'a hundred'

Most often these nouns are used for numbers of trams, buses and trolleybuses in public transport:

За гѝрата трѝбва да взѝме- 'To the station you have to  
те единѝцата или седмѝцата. take tram number 1 or 7.'

In colloquial speech they are used to denote marks:

Днес полѝчих шестѝца по 'Today I got an excellent (6)  
англиѝски. mark in English.'

In Russian they are used similarly:

Опѝть двѝйка. 'Again a poor (2) mark.'

### Formation of Adjectives from Cardinal Numerals

a) The suffixes *-оен(-оин-)*, *-оен(-оин-)* derive adjectives which denote the number of parts an object consists of.

двѝен, двѝйна, двѝйно, двѝйни	'double, two fold'
двѝйно легло	'a double-size bed'
трѝен, трѝйна, трѝйно, трѝйни	'triple, threefold'
трѝйно прѝвило	'the rule of three'
двадѝсетѝен, двадѝсетѝйна, двадѝсетѝйно, двадѝсетѝйни	'twenty-fold'

In Russian:

двойнѝй, двойнѝя, двойнѝе, двойнѝе

тройнѝй, трѝйна, трѝйне, трѝйне

b) The suffix *-кратен(-кратн-)* derives adjectives denoting the number of repetitions.

еднократѝен, еднократѝйна, еднократѝйно, еднократѝйни	'single'
еднократѝйно възнагѝраждѝние	'one time, single payment'
двукратѝен, двукратѝйна, двукратѝйно, двукратѝйни	'double, twofold'
двукратѝйен шампиѝн	'twice champion'
петократѝен, петократѝйна, петократѝйно, петократѝйни	'five-fold'
Ако загѝбите кнѝга, трѝбва	'If you lose a book you will
да я платѝте в петократѝен	have to pay five times the
размѝр.	price.'
стократѝен, стократѝйна, стократѝйно, стократѝйни	'hundred-fold'

c) Cardinal numerals are used as a first component in compound adjectives:

двустрѝнен	'bilateral'
двугѝдишен/двѝгодишен	'two-year'(attr.)
трѝсрѝчен	'three-syllable'(attr.)
четѝримѝсѝчен	'four-month'(attr.)

d) Ordinal numerals are also used as components of compound adjectives:

пѝрвѝстѝепенѝен	'first-rate'(attr.)
пѝрвѝклѝсен	'first-class'(attr.)
вторѝклѝсен	'second-class'(attr.)

## IV. PRONOUNS

### Местоимения

Pronouns indicate living beings, things and their qualities without naming or describing them. Being substitutes of other parts of speech, they are used very frequently and form a considerable part of any text or conversation.

From a semantic point of view the pronouns are subdivided into nine subclasses:

1. Personal pronouns: аз, ти, той, тя, то, ние, вие, те - 'I, you (sg.), he, she, it, we, you, they';
2. Possessive pronouns: мой 'my', твой 'your', негов, негова, негово, негови 'his', неин 'her', наш 'our', ваш 'your', техен 'their'...
3. Reflexive pronouns: себе си, се, си 'oneself', свой, своя, свое, свои 'my own, your own, his own, her own, its own, our own, your own, their own';
4. Demonstrative pronouns: този, тоя, тази, това 'this', тези 'these', онзи, онази, онова 'that', онези 'those';
5. Interrogative pronouns: кой, коя, кое, кой 'who, which one' какъв 'what', чий 'whose'...
6. Relative pronouns: който, която, което, който, какъвто, чийто... 'who, that, whose';
7. Indefinite pronouns: някой, някакъв, нечий... 'somebody, some, somebody's';
8. Negative pronouns: никой, никакъв, ничий... - 'nobody, no, nobody's';
9. Generalizing pronouns: всеки, всякой, всякакъв... - 'anybody, anyone, any'

### 1. Personal Pronouns

#### Лични местоимения

Personal pronouns indicate persons or objects from the point of view of their relation to the speaker. They have different forms for the singular and the plural and in the third person singular - for the masculine, feminine and neuter gender. They also have different forms for the Nominative, Accusative and Dative cases.

### Nominative Subject

### Accusative Direct Object

### Dative Indirect Object

#### Full form

#### Short form

#### Full form

#### Short form

#### Singular:

аз	'I'	мене	ме	на мене	ми	'me'
ти	'you'	тебе	те	на тебе	ти	'you'
той	'he'	него	го	на него	му	'him'
тя	'she'	нея	я	на нея	й	'her'
то	'it'	него	го	на него	му	'it'

#### Plural:

ние	'we'	нас	ни	на нас	ни	'us'
вие	'you'	вас	ви	на вас	ви	'you'
те	'they'	тях	ги	на тях	им	'them'

#### In Russian:

Nominative case	Genitive case	Dative case	Accusative case	Instrumental	Prepositional case
я	'I'	меня	меня	мною	мне
ты	'you'	тебя	тебя	тобой	тебе
он	'he'	нему	его	им	нём
она	'she'	ей	её	ей	ней
оно	'it'	ему	его	им	нём
мы	'we'	нам	нас	нас	нас
вы	'you'	вам	вас	вас	вас
они	'they'	ним	их	их	них

### Use of the Personal Pronouns

a) The Nominative forms of the personal pronouns are used when they function as Subjects or Attributives. E.g.:

Те получи́ха извѣстие́то вче́ра. "They got the message yesterday."

Unlike English, personal pronouns in subject position are often omitted in Bulgarian, especially when the Subject does not carry the logical stress. The endings of the verb indicate the person, number and gender of the omitted subject.

Зае́т съм.	'I am busy.' (male)
Зае́та съм.	'I am busy.' (female)
Зае́ти сме.	'We are busy.'

b) The short forms of the personal pronouns are used more often



than the full (or emphatic) forms. The accusative forms of the personal pronouns function as direct objects. E.g.:

Аз *ги* потърсих, но те 'I looked for them, but they were  
не бяха вкъщи. not at home.'  
Иван *ме* поздрави. 'Ivan greeted me.'  
Почакай *я*. 'Wait for her.'

The short dative forms of the personal pronouns function as indirect objects. E.g.:

Ще *ти* обясня всичко. 'I'll explain everything to you.'  
Тя *им* е обещала. 'She has promised them.'

The short forms of the personal pronouns are never used at the beginning of a sentence or after a preposition. When a sentence begins with a verb, the pronoun stands immediately after the verb.

Боли *го* главата. 'He has a headache.'  
Нося *ти* писмо. 'I've brought you a letter.'

When a sentence begins with some other word, the pronoun stands before the verb:

Какво *ти* е? 'What's the matter with you?'

In the future tense the short forms of the pronouns stand after the particle *ще* or *няма да* :

Ще *ги* поканим. 'We'll invite them.'  
Няма да *го* поканим. 'We won't invite him.'

When used with double object verbs the short Dative forms of the pronouns are placed before the Accusative ones:

- Показа ли снимките 'Did you show the photographs to на  
родителите си? your parents?'  
- Да, показах *им ги*. 'Yes, I did. (I showed them to  
them.)'

The short forms of the personal pronouns are never stressed except when preceded by the negative particle *не* :

Дадох *го*. 'I've given it.'  
Не *го* дадох. 'I've not given it.'  
Чакай *ги*. 'Wait for them.'  
Не *ги* чакай. 'Don't wait for them.'

c) The full (or emphatic) Accusative forms are used when the logical stress falls on the Object, expressed by a personal pronoun:

- Тебе ли погледна или 'Did he look at you or at her?'

нея?

- *Мене* погледна, а не *нея*. 'He looked at me, not at her.'

The full Dative forms of the personal pronouns are frequently used after prepositions:

- Какво да ви поръчам? 'What shall I order for you?'  
- *На мене* поръчай чай, 'Tea for me and coffee for them.'  
а *на тях* - кафе.

#### Accusative forms:

*Мене ме* боли зъб. 'I have a toothache.'  
*Него го* няма. 'He is not here.'  
*Тебе те* е яд. 'You are angry.'  
*Нея я* е страх. 'She is afraid.'

#### Dative forms:

*На мене ми* се пие кафе. 'I feel like having coffee.'  
*На тебе ти* се спи. 'You are sleepy.'  
*На нас ни* е много приятно. 'We are very pleased. (It's a  
pleasure to us.)'  
*На тях им* е горещо. 'They are feeling hot.'

The object (direct and indirect) is also expressed by a noun and the short form of a personal pronoun used together (the so called double object in Bulgarian):

*Студентите ги* няма днес. 'The students are not here  
Today.'

Какво *му* е *на детето*? 'What's the matter with the child?'

## 2. Possessive Pronouns

### Притежателни местоимения

Possessive pronouns in Bulgarian correspond to Personal Pronouns and behave as Adjectives.

They have full and short forms.

Possession in Bulgarian is also expressed by a combination of the preposition *на* + a noun or by an adjective formed from a noun with the suffixes *-ов* or *-ин*:

Книгата *на* Иван. 'Ivan's book.'  
Ивановата книга. 'His book.'  
*Неговата* книга/Книгата *му*. 'His book.'  
Стаята *на* Живка.

Живкината стая. 'Zhivka's room.'

Нейната стая/Стаята ѝ. 'Her room.'

The questions for possession are:

На когд е тази книга? 'Whose is this book?' (unchangeable)

Чий е този вестник? 'Whose is this newspaper?' (masc.)

Чия е тази книга? 'Whose is this book?' (fem.)

Чие е това писмо? 'Whose is this letter?' (neut.)

Чии са тези дрехи? 'Whose are these clothes?' (pl.)

Person	Full forms		One possessor - many things possessed	Short forms
	masc.	fem. neut.	plural	sing. and plural
аз	мой	моя	моё	моя
	'my, mine'		мои	'my'
ти	твой	твоя	твоё	твоя
	'your, yours'		твои	'your'
той	негов	негова	негово	негови
	'his' 'his'		негови	'his'
тя	неин	нейна	нейно	нейни
	'her, hers'		нейни	'her'
то	негов	негова	негово	негови
	'its'		негови	'its'
	Many possessors - one thing possessed		Many possessors - more than one thing possessed	
ние	наш	наша	наше	наши
	'our, ours' 'our, ours'		наши	'our'
вие	ваш	ваша	ваше	ваши
	'your, yours' 'your, yours'		ваши	'your'
те	техен	тяхна	тяхно	техни
	'their, theirs' 'their, theirs'		техни	'their'

The Russian possessive pronouns are quite similar to the Bulgarian ones:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Pl.	English
Questions:	чей	чья	чьё	чьи	'whose'
Pronouns:	мой	моя	моё	мой	'my'
	твой	твоя	твоё	твой	'your'
	его	его	его	его	'his'
	её	её	её	её	'her'
	наш	наша	наше	наши	'our'
	ваш	ваша	ваше	ваши	'your'
	их	их	их	их	'their'

As can be seen from the tables the main difference is that all Bulgarian possessive pronouns change in gender and number while in Russian the third person singular and plural possessive pronouns are unchangeable.

In Russian the possessive pronouns are positioned before the noun as adjectives and there is no short form as there is in Bulgarian, used after the noun possessed.

In Russian there is no definite article.

The rules for the use of the definite article with the Bulgarian full possessive forms of the pronouns are the same as for adjectives. If a noun phrase is the subject of a sentence, the possessive pronoun defining the noun in it takes the full form of the definite article (masculine form only). If a masculine noun defined by a possessive pronoun is in Object position, the short form of the article is added to the possessive pronoun.

Masculine			
Pron.	Subject Position	Object Position	English
мой	моят брат	моя брат	'my brother'
твой	твоят брат	твоя брат	'your brother'
негов	неговият брат	неговия брат	'his brother'
неин	нейният брат	нейния брат	'her brother'
наш	нашият брат	нашия брат	'our brother'
ваш	вашият брат	вашия брат	'your brother'
техен	техният брат	техния брат	'their brother'



The definite article for feminine is **-ma**, for neuter gender - **-mo**, and for plural - **-me**, in both positions - Subject and Object.

Feminine	With article	English
моя	<b>моята</b> сестра	'my sister'
твоя	<b>твоята</b> сестра	'your sister'
негов	<b>неговата</b> сестра	'his sister'
нейна	<b>нейната</b> сестра	'her sister'
наша	<b>нашата</b> сестра	'our sister'
ваша	<b>вашата</b> сестра	'your sister'
тяхна	<b>тяхната</b> сестра	'their sister'
Neuter	With article	English
моё	<b>моето</b> дете	'my child'
твоё	<b>твоят</b> о дете	'your child'
негово	<b>неговото</b> дете	'his child'
нейно	<b>нейното</b> дете	'her child'
наше	<b>нашето</b> дете	'our child'
ваше	<b>вашето</b> дете	'your child'
тяхно	<b>тяхното</b> дете	'their child'
Plural	With article	English
мѐи	<b>мѐите</b> братя, сестри, деца	
твѐи	<b>твѐите</b> братя, сестри, деца	
негови	<b>неговите</b> братя, сестри, деца	
нейни	<b>нейните</b> братя, сестри, деца	
наши	<b>нашите</b> братя, сестри, деца	
ваши	<b>вашите</b> братя, сестри, деца	
техни	<b>техните</b> братя, сестри, деца	

In contrast to Bulgarian, in English no definite article is added to possessive adjectives or pronouns because they contain this idea in their meaning (my, your, his, mine, yours are determiners).

#### Examples:

##### a) masculine

Синът на Иванов е студент.	'Ivanov's son is a student.'
<b>Неговият</b> син е студент	'His son is a first-year student.'
в първи курс.	
Успехът на <b>неговия</b> син	'His son has excellent grades.'
е отличен.	

##### b) feminine

Дъщерята на Ева е малка.	'Eva's daughter is young.'
<b>Нейната</b> дъщеря е малка.	'Her daughter is young.'

##### c) neuter

Не знаех, че имаш дете.	'I didn't know you had a child.'
Това ли е <b>твоят</b> о дете?	'Is this your child?'

##### d) plural

Всичките играчки са на	'All the toys belong to your children.'
<b>вашите</b> деца.	

Usually possessive pronouns do not take the definite article after the verb **съм** 'to be':

Този учебник е <b>мой</b> .	'This textbook is mine.'
<b>Твоя</b> ли е тази тетрадка?	'Is this notebook yours?'

In combination of Possessive pronoun + Adjective + Noun the definite article is added to the possessive pronoun, which is first in the combination.

Нашият по-малък син играе	'Our younger son is playing in the yard.'
на двора.	

The short forms of the possessive pronouns occur after nouns, which always take the definite article:

Работата <b>им</b> е качествена.	'Their work is of high quality.'
Положението <b>му</b> е тежко.	'He is quite hard up.'

Whenever a noun is preceded by more than one attribute, the short form of the possessive pronoun is placed after the first attribute, which takes the definite article:

Първото <b>му</b> публикувано стихотворение беше лирично.	'His first published poem was lyrical.'
---	---

Most nouns denoting kinship terms when combined with the short form of the possessive pronouns do not take the article:

майка ми	'my mother'
баба ти	'your grandmother'
баща му	'his father'
дядо ѝ	'her grandfather'
снаха̀ ни	'our daughter-in-law'
дъщеря̀ ви	'your daughter'
чичо им	'their uncle'

**BUT:**

внукът ѝ	'her grandson'
мъжът ми	'my husband'
племенникът им	'their nephew'
племенницата̀ ви	'your niece'

The definite article is obligatory in the plural:

майкитѐ ни	'our mothers'
бащитѐ ви	'your fathers'
дядовцитѐ им	'their grandfathers'

The short forms of the possessive pronouns are not stressed. They form an accent entity with the preceding noun.

The full forms of the possessive pronouns are preferred and occur more frequently than the short forms in the following cases:

a) when the logical stress falls on the pronoun:

Нали това̀ е неговия̀т	'This is his umbrella, isn't it?'
чадър?	

b) when used in forms of address:

Върни се, <i>мое</i> скъпо дете!	'Come back, my dear child!'
----------------------------------	-----------------------------

### 3. Reflexive Pronouns

#### *Възвратни местоимения*

The system of reflexive pronouns in Bulgarian does not fully correspond to English reflexive pronouns. There are two kinds of reflexive pronouns in Bulgarian: Personal and Possessive.

### A. Personal Reflexive Pronouns

Personal reflexive pronouns usually function as Direct or Indirect objects (they never occur in Subject position).

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative
full form	-	<i>себе си</i>	<i>на себе си</i>
short form	-	<i>се</i>	<i>си</i>
English		'oneself'	'to oneself'

**Note:** These forms are used for all persons singular and plural. (That is, the personal reflexive pronoun does not change in gender and number):

Той говори на себе си. 'He talks to himself.'

Тя говори на себе си. 'She talks to herself.'

Ние говорим на себе си. 'We talk to ourselves.'

The Bulgarian personal reflexive pronouns *себе си* (*се*), *на себе си* (*си*) partly correspond to English reflexive personal pronouns:

Запази това̀ за себе си. 'Keep that to yourself.'

Тя трябва да се грижи за себе си. 'She must take care of herself.'

Винаги мисля първо за себе си. 'I always think of myself first. (I always take care of my needs first.)'

The Russian reflexive pronoun is *себя* and its usage is quite similar to the Bulgarian reflexive pronouns:

Эгоист всегда думает о себе. 'An egoist would think of himself.'

The short forms of the personal reflexive pronouns in Bulgarian occur more frequently than the full forms. The full forms occur:

a) after a preposition:

Носиш ли учебника със себе си? 'Have you brought the textbook (with you)?'

b) when the logical stress falls on the pronoun:

Който пуши, вреди не само на себе си. 'Those who smoke harm not only themselves.'

The reflexive verbs in Bulgarian are formed by means of the short forms of the reflexive personal pronouns *се* and *си* (*мия се*, *мия си*



ръцете, къпя се, бръсна се). Compare the Russian reflexive particle -ся written together with the verbs: мýться 'to wash oneself', купаться 'to bathe, swim (oneself)', бриться 'to shave oneself'.

1. Verbs that can occur as either reflexive or non-reflexive:

- |    |                    |                         |
|----|--------------------|-------------------------|
| a) | мíя (нèщо)         | 'I wash something'      |
|    | мíя се             | 'I wash myself'         |
|    | пáзя (нýкого)      | 'I guard someone'       |
|    | пáзя се            | 'I take care of myself' |
|    | рèша (нýкого)      | 'I comb someone'        |
|    | рèша се            | 'I comb myself'         |
| b) | говòря (на нýкого) | 'I talk to someone'     |
|    | говòря си          | 'I talk to myself'      |
|    | кáзвам (на нýкого) | 'I say to someone'      |
|    | кáзвам си          | 'I say to myself'       |

With some verbs the short forms *ce* and *cu* can sometimes be replaced by the full forms *себе си*, *на себе си*:

купýвам си - купýвам на себе си 'I buy (sth) for myself'

2. There is a group of reflexive verbs, in which the short forms cannot be replaced by the full forms. They do not usually correspond to reflexive verbs in English. Their English counterparts are most frequently Intransitive verbs.

смèя се	'to laugh'	трýдя се	'to work hard, toil'
бíя се	'to fight'	сърдя се	'to be angry'
опítвам се	'to try'	бòря се	'to struggle'
връщам се	'to return'	усмíхвам се	'to smile'
вълнýвам се	'to be excited'	разхòждам се	'to take a walk'
спòмням си	'to remember'	мíсля си	'to think'
лягам си	'to go to bed'	въобpазявам си	'to imagine, fancy'
почíвам си	'to take a rest'	отíвам си	'to go back (home)'

In contrast to English, structures like:

спí ми се	'I feel like sleeping'
игpàе ти се	'You feel like playing'
ядè му се	'He feels like eating', etc.

are impersonal and **reflexive**.

A very important point is the correct use of the short forms *ce* and *cu* with verbs which can take either one or two objects.

E.g. мíя 'to wash' бърша 'to wipe'

облíчам	'to dress'	бръсна	'to shave'
обувам	'to put on shoes'	събýвам	'to take off'

Мíя се.	'I am washing myself.'
Мíя си лицèто.	'I am washing my face.'
Ще се облекà бързо.	'I'll dress quickly.'
Ще си облекà нòвия костýм.	'I'll put on my new suit.'

As can be seen from the examples, *ce* is used when there is no object mentioned in the sentence, and *cu* is used when there is an object (and this use is partly possessive).

**Note** the word order of personal reflexive pronouns:

1. The pronouns *ce* and *cu* are never used at the beginning of a sentence:

Колебàя се. 'I hesitate.'

It's wrong to say: \* се колебая

2. If a sentence begins with a verb, the reflexive pronoun is placed after the verb:

Разхòждам се в пàрка всèки ден. 'I walk in the park every day.'

3. If a sentence begins with another word the reflexive pronoun is placed before the verb:

Мъжът ми се бръсне два пýти на ден. 'My husband shaves twice a day.'

The short reflexive pronouns should be pronounced with no stress - as an entity with the verb no matter if they are preceding it or coming after the verb.

Засмèй се!	'Cheer up! (Smile, laugh!)
Моля те, измíй си ръцèте.	'Please, wash your hands.'
Тя го помòли да си измíе ръцèте.	'She asked him to wash his hands.'

But when the verb is negative the reflexive pronouns are stressed.

Не сè смèй!	'Don't laugh!'
Не сè правí на глупак!	'Don't make a fool of yourself!'
Не сù мий ръцèте със студèна вода.	'Don't wash your hands with cold water.'

## B. The Possessive Reflexive Pronouns

Full forms		neut	Plural	Short form
masc.	fem.			
<i>своѝ</i>	<i>свѡя</i>	<i>своѡ</i>	<i>своѡи</i>	<i>си</i>
<i>своѡ</i>	<i>своѡята</i>	<i>своѡето</i>	<i>своѡите</i>	<i>си</i>

There are no corresponding reflexive possessive pronouns in English and the Bulgarian reflexive possessive pronouns are translated with possessive adjectives and pronouns (sometimes emphasized by the word 'own'):

Обичам *своѡята* родина. 'I love my (own) country.'

The corresponding reflexive possessive pronouns in Russian are: свой, своя, своё, свои. Their usage is very similar to the Bulgarian pronouns (used when the object belongs to the doer of the action) but in Russian they change according to the case:

Она̀ ждѣт своѡгѡ брѡта, своѡю сестру̀ и своѡх родитѣлей. 'She is waiting for her brother, sister and parents.'

The reflexive possessive pronouns are never used as attributes to the Subject. They usually occur in Object Noun Phrases as attributes to the Object (and only when the Object belongs to the Subject of the sentence - if not - the possessive pronouns should be used.) Masculine pronouns never take the definite article -я̀т but only -я̀. They answer to questions beginning with the interrogative pronoun чѡѝ, чѡѡ, чѡѡе, чѡѡи 'whose':

Вѡе изглѣжда не виждате *своѡите* слабѡсти. (чѡѡ?) 'You don't seem to be aware of your (own) faults.'

The full forms of the reflexive possessive pronoun are placed before nouns. The rules for the article are the same as for the Possessive Pronouns:

Знаѡ *своѡите* задѣлжѣния. 'I know my duties.'

The short form occurs after nouns, which take a definite article with the exception of some nouns denoting relatives:

Те ще брѡнят правѡта *си*. 'They will defend (stand for) their rights.'

Обичам ма̀йка *си*.

'I love my mother.'

The definite article is obligatory in the plural:

Разка̀жѡ ми нѣщо за роднѝните *си*. 'Tell me something about your relatives.'

The full forms of the reflexive possessive pronouns in the 1st and 2nd person singular can sometimes be substituted by the full forms of the possessive pronouns:

Ще ни разка̀жете ли за *своѡето* пъту̀ване? 'Will you tell us about your trip?'

Ще ни разка̀жете ли за *ва̀шето* пъту̀ване?

Note, however, that the short form of the reflexive possessive pronoun cannot be replaced by the short forms of the possessive pronouns:

Ще ни разка̀жете ли за пъту̀ва̀- ването *си*? 'Will you tell us about your trip?'

Note:

When the full forms of the reflexive possessive pronouns for the 3rd person singular and plural *своѡй*, *своѡя*, *своѡе*, *своѡи* along with the short form *си* are attributes to a noun and denote that it is in possession of the Subject Noun Phrase, they are not interchangeable with possessive pronouns. Substitutions of the kind will cause a change in the meaning of the sentence:

Пѣтър се срѣща със *своѡята* приятѣлка всѣки ден. 'Peter dates his girlfriend every day.'

Пѣтър се срѣща с *неговата* приятѣлка всѣки ден.

"неговата приятѣлка" means his, but not Peter's, somebody else's girlfriend. (With possessive pronouns the object does not belong to the subject of the sentence.)

## 4. Demonstrative Pronouns

In contrast to English, the demonstrative pronouns in Bulgarian have forms for gender.



	masc.	Singular fem.	neut.	Plural
Nearby persons objects	<i>тòзи</i> <i>тòя</i> 'this'	<i>тази</i> <i>тая</i> 'this'	<i>това̀</i> <i>туй</i> 'this'	<i>тèзи</i> <i>тѝя</i> 'these'
Distant persons, objects	<i>òзи</i> <i>òня</i> 'that'	<i>онàзи</i> <i>онàя</i> 'that'	<i>оно̀ва̀</i> <i>онуй</i> 'that'	<i>онèзи</i> <i>онѝя</i> 'those'
Denoting Quality	<i>такòв</i> 'such a'	<i>такàва</i> 'such a'	<i>такòва</i> 'such a'	<i>такѝва</i> 'such'
Denoting Quantity	<i>тòлко̀ва</i> 'so much/many, that much/many'			

ГЛИЙСКИ.

The demonstrative pronouns can be used independently and attributively. When used attributively, they occur before nouns and take no article. The nouns, which stand after them do not take the article, either.

Можє и да не повярваш на *това*, но той вѣче не пїє мнѡго.

'Well you may not believe it, (this) but he doesn't drink much any more.'

Поради *тѐзи* причини те  
съветвам да бъдеш много  
внимателна.

‘For all these reasons my ad-  
vice is to be very careful.’

## 5. Interrogative Pronouns

### Въпросителни местоимения

English and Bulgarian interrogative pronouns are similar in function but the Bulgarian pronouns distinguish gender and number.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Persons & objects	<i>кой</i>	<i>коя</i> 'who/what'	<i>коѐ</i>	<i>коѹ</i>
Only for objects	<i>какѡѡ/що</i> 'what'			
Only for Persons	<i>когѡ</i> (accusative form) Preposition + <i>когѡ</i> 'who/whom'			
For Quality	<i>какѡѡ</i>	<i>какѡѡ</i>	<i>какѡѡ</i> 'what/what kind of'	<i>какѡѹ</i>
For Possession	<i>чий</i> <i>на когѡ</i>	<i>чья</i> <i>на когѡ</i> 'whose'	<i>чье</i> <i>на когѡ</i>	<i>чий</i> <i>на когѡ</i>
For Quantity		<i>коѡко</i> 'how many/how much'		

The pronoun *кой* is used independently (as a noun) when the question refers to the Subject of the sentence. It is used for all genders singular and plural and the verb is in the third person singular (the same rule applies to the English question 'who'):

Кой чұка на вратата? 'Who is knocking at the door?'

The pronouns *каквò/що* are used when the Subject is a non-person:

- Каквò се двйжи там? 'What's moving over there?'

- Мйсля, че е зàек. 'I think it's a hare.'

When the question refers to the attributive the gender and number of the interrogative pronoun are in concord with the gender and number of the Subject:

Кой е тòзи човèк? 'Who is that man?'

Коя е тàзи женà? 'Who is that woman?'

Кой са тèзи хòра? 'Who are those people?'

When used adjectivally (as attributes), the pronouns *кой, коя, коè, кой* agree with the gender and number of the noun they refer to:

Коя кнйга предпочйташ? 'Which book do you prefer?'

Кòй филм глèдахте? 'Which film did you see?'

Кой градовè ще посетйш? 'Which towns are you going to visit?'

The masculine singular interrogative pronouns have an accusative and a dative form.

a) The accusative form *когò* is used as direct object and object of preposition:

Когò йскаше да вйдиш? 'Who did you want to see?'

На когò дàде рèчника? 'Who did you give the dictionary to?'

b) the dative form *комұ* is usually replaced by a prepositional phrase *на* + the accusative form *когò*. The dative form *комұ* sounds rather obsolete.

На когò (комұ) предàдохте писмòто? 'Who did you deliver the letter to?/To whom did you deliver the letter?'

The interrogative pronouns can be used independently and adjectivally:

Каквò ще бйде врèмето ўтре? 'What will the weather be like tomorrow?'

Каквй кнйги предпочйташ? 'What (kind of) books do you prefer?'

The pronoun *каквò* when used independently refers to the Object when it is not a person:

Каквò ще ми препорйчате? 'What would you recommend (to me)?'

The interrogative pronouns denoting possession *чий, чия, чие, чий* may optionally be replaced by the prepositional phrase:

Чий/на когò е този учебник? 'Whose is this textbook? (Who does this textbook belong to?)'

Чия/на когò е тàзи химикалка? 'Whose is this pen?'

Чие/на когò е детèто? 'Whose is the child?'

Чий/на когò са тèзи кнйги? 'Whose ate these books?'

Note that *на когò* is the same form for all genders and plural.

The pronoun *кòлко* (denoting quantity) is used for all genders singular and plural. Masculine nouns denoting objects and ending in a consonant have a special form for the plural when preceded by the pronoun *кòлко*:

Кòлко лèва стрұва тàзи чанта? 'How much (how many levs) is that handbag?'

Кòлко рèчника кұпихте? 'How many dictionaries have you bought?'

BUT with nouns for people the usual plural form is used:

Кòлко студèнти изпйтахте досегà? 'How many students have you examined so far?'

In contrast to English, *кòлко* is used with both countable and uncountable nouns:

Кòлко чàса ще ймате ўтре? 'How many classes are you going to have tomorrow?'

Кòлко врèме мòжеш да ми отделиш? 'How much time can you spare me?'

The Russian interrogative pronouns are quite similar to the Bulgarian ones:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
кто	кой	'who'
что	какво/що	'what'
кого	кого	'whom'



какòй	какъв	'what' (masc.)
какàя	каквà	'what' (fem.)
какòе	каквò	'what' (neut.)
какìе	каквì	'what' (pl.)
чей	чий	'whose' (masc.)
чья	чийà	'whose' (fem.)
че	чиè	'whose' (neut.)
чи	чий	'whose' (pl.)
скòлько	кòлко	'how many/much'

## 6. Relative Pronouns

### Относителни местоимения

Relative pronouns are formed by adding the morpheme *-то* to the interrogative pronouns:

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
Persons & objects	<i>кòйто</i>	<i>кòято</i>	<i>кòето</i>	<i>кòйто</i>
	'who/which/that'			
Only for persons	<i>когòто</i> , Preposition + <i>когòто</i> 'who/whom/that'			
Denoting quality	<i>какъто</i>	<i>каквàто</i>	<i>каквòто</i>	<i>каквìто</i>
	'such.../as'			
Denoting possession	<i>чийто</i>	<i>чийàто</i>	<i>чиèто</i>	<i>чийто</i>
	'whose'			
Denoting quantity	<i>кòлкото</i>			
	'as many/much... as'			

Relative pronouns introduce all sorts of dependent clauses. Most of the relative pronouns agree in gender and number with the word they qualify in the main clause.

Как се казва момичето, <i>което</i>	'What's the name of the girl who has just come in?'
току-що влезе?	
Не обичам хората, <i>които</i>	'I don't like people who easily lose their temper.'
лесно се сърдят.	
Това, <i>което</i> той каза, беше	'What he said was true.'
истина.	
Никога няма да намериш та-	'You'll never find such a
къв приятел, <i>както</i> е той.	friend as he is.'

The relative pronouns denoting possession *чийто*, *чийàто*, *чиèто*, *чийто* agree in gender and number not with the noun in the main clause, but with the word it precedes in the subordinate clause:

Това беше случка, <i>чието</i>	'It was an event, whose
значение не разбиха тога-	importance I did not realize
ва.	at the time.'

The pronoun *кòлкото* does not change in gender and number:

Тя не è толкова добра,	'She is not as good-natured as
<i>кòлкото</i> изглежда.	she seems to be.'
Мòга да ти заема толкова	'I can lend you as much money
пари, <i>кòлкото</i> ти трябват.	as you need.'

In contrast to English, Bulgarian relative pronouns are never omitted.

In Russian, similarly to English (and not to Bulgarian) the interrogative pronouns are used as relative pronouns.

Он оставàлся в Москвè стòль-	'He stayed in Moscow as
ко дней, <i>скòлько</i> мог.	many days as he could (afford).'

## 7. Indefinite Pronouns

### Неопределителни местоимения

Indefinite pronouns are formed by adding the prefix *ня-*, *не-* to the Interrogative Pronouns. The numerals *едìн*, *еднà*, *еднò*, *еднì* are also used as Indefinite pronouns denoting persons and objects.

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
For persons and objects	<i>някой</i> 'somebody/some, anybody/any'	<i>някоя</i>	<i>някое</i>	<i>някои</i>
Only for persons	<i>някого</i> , preposition + <i>някого</i> 'someone/somebody/anybody'			
For objects	<i>нѐщо</i> 'something/anything'			
For quality	<i>някакъв</i>	<i>някаква</i>	<i>някакво</i>	<i>някакви</i> 'some'
For possession	<i>нѐчий</i>	<i>нѐчия</i>	<i>нѐчие</i>	<i>нѐчиш</i> 'someone's/somebody's'
For quantity	<i>няколко</i> 'several/some/a few/a number of'			

In Russian language indefinite pronouns are formed by adding the suffix **-то** or **-нибудь** (both spelled with a hyphen) after the interrogative pronouns :

кто-то	что-то	чей-то	какой-то
кто-нибудь	что-нибудь	чей-нибудь	какой-нибудь
'someone'	'something'	'someone's'	'some'

The Russian pronouns meaning 'several' is *несколько* and is close to the Bulgarian *няколко*.

Indefinite pronouns can be used both adjectivally (as attributes) and independently:

<i>Някои</i> хора предпочитат да ходят на планина, а други - на морѐ.	'Some people prefer going to the mountains, others - to the seaside.'
Има ли <i>някой</i> в стаята?	'Is there anyone in the room?'

The masculine indefinite pronoun *някой* has a special form *някого*, which occurs in Direct Object position or after preposition:

Търсите ли <i>някого</i> ?	'Are you looking for someone?'
Ще попитам <i>някого</i> .	'I'll ask somebody.'
Дай на <i>някого</i> ключа.	'Give the key to somebody'
Мислиш ли за <i>някого</i> ?	'Are you thinking about any body?'

The pronoun *нѐщо* is used for animals and inanimate objects:  
*Нѐщо* се движи там. 'Something is moving over there.'

Имаш ли да кажеш *нѐщо*? 'Have you got anything to say?'

The indefinite pronouns for quality, possession and quantity occur only attributively:

Има ли <i>някакво</i> значѐние?	'Does it make any difference? (Is it of any importance?)'
Той говорѐше с <i>някакъв</i> човек на улицата.	'He was talking to some man in the street.'
Предложиха ни <i>няколко</i> билѐта за ѓпера.	'We've been offered a few (several) tickets for the opera.'

Masculine inanimate nouns ending in a consonant, combined with the pronoun have a special form for the plural:

*няколко* столѐ/учѐбника 'several chairs/textbooks'

**BUT with persons:**

*няколко* студѐнти/асис-тѐнти 'several students/assistant professors'

### Negative Pronouns

#### Отрицателни местоимения

Negative pronouns are formed by adding the prefix *ни-* in front of Interrogative pronouns.

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
For persons and objects	<i>никой</i>	<i>никоя</i>	<i>никое</i>	<i>никои</i> 'nobody/noone/no'
Only for persons	<i>никого</i> , preposition + <i>никого</i> 'nobody/anyone/anybody'			
For objects animate & inanimate	<i>нищо</i> 'nothing/anything'			



	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
For quality	<i>никакъв</i>	<i>никаква</i>	<i>никакво</i> 'no'	<i>никакви</i>
For possession	<i>ничий</i>	<i>ничия</i> 'nobody's'	<i>ничие</i>	<i>ничи</i>
For quantity	<i>николко</i> 'none'			

Similarly in Russian negative pronouns are formed by adding the same prefix to interrogative pronouns:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
никто	никой	'nobody'
ничто	нищо	'nothing'
ничей	ничий	'nobody's'
никакой	никакъв	'no'
нисколько	николко	'none'

In Russian there are also negative pronouns formed with the prefix **не-** which denote absence of object. In Bulgarian there are no similar pronouns:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
Мне некого	Няма когò да	'There is nobody
ждать.	чакам.	to wait for.'
Мне нечего	Няма каквò да	'There is nothing
читать.	четà.	to read.'

In contrast to English the negative pronouns in Bulgarian always co-occur with the negative form of the verbs. Double negation is a typical feature of the Bulgarian language.

<i>Никой</i> не ми каза, че си дошъл.	'Nobody told me you have come.'
<i>Никоя</i> от приятелките ми не живее наблизо.	'None of my girlfriends lives near here.'

The double negation is typical for Russian, too:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
Я ничегò не читал.	Аз нищо не съм чел.	'I haven't read anything.'

When the masculine negative pronoun *никой* functions as a Direct Object and is used independently only for persons it has the form *никого* and when it occurs in Indirect Object position - preposition + *никого*:

Отворих вратата, но не можàх да видя <i>никого</i> .	'I opened the door but I could not see anyone.'
Моля те, не гò давай на <i>никого</i> .	'Please, don't give it to anybody.'
За <i>никого</i> не сè сещам.	'I can't think of anyone.'
С <i>никого</i> не сè срещам.	'I don't date anybody.'

The negative pronoun *нищо* refers to animate and inanimate objects:

*Ничо* не виждам. 'I don't see anything.'

The negative pronouns denoting quality and possession are used adjectivally:

Той не ми е <i>никакъв</i> приятел.	'He is no friend of mine.'
Нямам <i>никакви</i> пари.	'I've got no money.'
- Чий са тези книги?	'Whose are those books?'
- <i>Ничии</i> . Намèрих ги на пейката.	'Nobody's. I found them left on the bench.'

The negative pronoun denoting quantity and number *николко* corresponds to the English pronoun 'none':

- Кòлко думи научи днès?	'How many words have you learnt today?'
- <i>Николко</i> . Болèше ме главàта.	'None. I had a headache.'

## 9. Generalizing Pronouns

### Обобщителни местоимения

The Generalizing Pronouns in Bulgarian are formed by adding the prefix **вся-/все-** before interrogative pronouns.

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
For persons	<i>всèки</i>	<i>всяка</i>	<i>всяко</i>	<i>всèки</i>
and objects	(всякой)	(всякоя)	(вся(кое))	(всякои)
	'all, every, each (one)'			

	masc.	fem.	neut.	plural
Only for persons	<i>всѣкиго</i> , preposition + <i>всѣкиго</i> 'each, everybody, everyone'			
Only for objects	<i>всѣчко</i> 'everything'			
For quality	<i>всякакъв</i>	<i>всякаква</i>	<i>всякакво</i>	<i>всякакви</i> 'all kinds of/any'
For quantity	<i>всѣчкият</i>	<i>всѣчката</i>	<i>всѣчкото</i>	<i>всѣчките</i> 'all, every'

In Russian the generalizing pronouns are:

masc.	fem.	neuter	pl.	
каждый	каждая	каждое	каждые	'each (one)'
любой	любая	любое	любые	
			'each one, any one'	
всякий	всякая	всякое	все	'all kinds of'
весь	вся	все	все	'all, the whole quantity'

The generalizing pronouns occur independently and adjectivally in Bulgarian:

<i>Всѣчки</i> , който ѝскат билѣти, да дѣйдат тук.	'All who would like tickets, should come here.'
<i>Всѣчко</i> се промѣня.	'Everything changes.'
Взѣмайте тѣзи хапчета на <i>всѣки</i> трѣ часа.	'Take these pills every three hours.'

The pronoun *всѣки* used independently has the form *всѣкиго* when it occurs in Direct Object position and a preposition + *всѣкиго* when it occurs in Indirect Object position. The dative case *всѣкому* is rather obsolete.

<i>За всѣкиго</i> ще ѝма рабѣта.	'There will be employment for everyone.'
----------------------------------	--

<i>На всѣкиго</i> отговаряше търпѣливо.	'She answered everybody patiently.'
---	-------------------------------------

The generalizing pronouns used adjectivally define the noun and the noun does not take the definite article.

<i>Всѣки</i> студѣнт трѣбва да рѣши задѣчата.	'Every student must solve the problem.'
---	---

## V. VERBS ГЛАГОЛИ

The Bulgarian language has a rather complex system of verbal forms. The verbal system is usually associated with the grammatical categories of person, number, tense, voice and mood.

The verbs in Bulgarian have lost their infinitive during the evolution of the language and in the contemporary language the basic, dictionary form is the first person singular of the present tense, while in Russian, as in English, verbs have an infinitive:

Bulgarian	Russian	English
чета	читать	'to read'
рабѣтя	рабѣтатъ	'to work'
гледам	смотрѣтъ	'to look at, watch'
отѣвам	идти	'to go'
помѣгам	помѣчь	'to help'

### 5.1. Classification of Verbs

#### Класификация на глаголите

According to some semantic and formal criteria verbs may be classified into:

- A. Transitive - Intransitive
- B. Personal - Impersonal
- B. Reflexive - Non-Reflexive
- D. Simple - Compound

#### A. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

##### Преходни и непреходни глаголи

a) Transitive verbs usually denote an action passing over to some person or non-person, presented in the sentence by a Direct Object. The



simple Verb Phrase in Bulgarian consists of a verbal form plus one or more complements:

Лёкарят преглѣда пациента. 'The doctor examined the  
(Subject) (Verb) (Object) patient.'

In some cases if the Object of a transitive verb is omitted the sentence may sound quite wrong or entirely different in meaning:

\*Лёкарят преглѣда... 'The doctor examined...'

In the passive transformation the recipient of the action usually appears as the Subject of the sentence:

Пациѣнтът бѣше преглѣдан 'The patient was examined by  
от лёкаря. the doctor.'

Objects of transitive verbs are introduced directly, without a preposition:

Записах адрѣса. 'I have written down the address.'

Transitive verbs may also occur intransitively (potential transitivity):

Сегѣ четѣ стѣтиятѣ, който 'I'm reading the article you  
ми даде. gave me.'

BUT:

Можете ли да четѣте без 'Can you read without your  
очилѣ? glasses?'

Начертѣйте картѣта на 'Draw the map of Bulgaria,  
Бългѣрия, мѣля. please.'

Когѣто чертѣеше, нѣкогѣ 'When he drew (designed) he  
не сѣ усмѣхваше. never smiled.'

Забелѣзвам нѣкакѣ промѣ- 'I notice some change in him.'  
на у нѣго.

BUT:

Правѣх се, че не забелѣзвам. 'I pretended not to notice.'

Transitive verbs may co-occur with both a direct and a prepositional object:

Изпрати ли снѣмките на 'Have you sent the photographs  
родителите си? to your parents?'

In contrast to English in Bulgarian it is not possible to place the Indirect Object to double object verbs right after the verb without a prepositional link, unless it is a personal pronoun.

Дадох книгѣта на Нѣли. 'I gave the book to Nelly.'

Дадох на Нѣли книгѣта. 'I gave to Nelly the book.'

Дадох ѣ книгѣта. 'I gave her the book.'

but not: \*Дадох Нѣли книгѣта. 'I gave Nelly the book.'

b) Intransitive verbs do not take a direct object. The object is usually introduced by a preposition. The preposition may vary depending on the meaning and valency of the verb. The prepositional phrases are often adverbial in meaning and add some information about the verbal action.

Чѣсто ли пътуваш сѣс само- 'Do you often travel by  
лѣт? plane?'

Самѣ ли пътувахте из стра- 'Did you travel alone about  
ната? the country?'

A great number of intransitive verbs are reflexive (they are accompanied by the reflexive pronoun *се*):

Доближавѣха сѣ до сѣлото. 'They were approaching the  
village.'

Катѣ детѣ страхувѣше ли сѣ 'When you were a child, were  
от тѣмнинѣта? you afraid of the dark?'

Тѣй сѣ оплѣкваше от бѣлки 'He complained of pain in the  
в гърдѣте. chest.'

Трудно ми е да сѣ съгласѣ 'I find it hard to agree with  
с вас за товѣ. you about this.'

Стремѣте сѣ към обективност 'You should strive after ob-  
в описѣниѣто. jectivity in your description.'

Ще сѣ бѣрим за правѣта си. 'We will fight for our rights!'

Some typically intransitive verbs in Bulgarian have transitive counterparts in English and vice versa.

Тѣя прилѣча на бащѣ си. 'She resembles her father.'

Тѣя ѣска да сѣ разведѣ 'She wants to divorce her  
с мъжѣ си. husband.'

Плѣдах момѣйчетѣ и си 'I looked at the girl and  
мѣслѣх... thought...'

Знам, че нѣкогѣ не лѣжеш 'I know you never lie to your  
приѣтелите си. friends.'

Some verbs show variation in colloquial usage and occur either transitively or intransitively:

минѣвам грѣницѣта/минѣвам през 'cross the border'

грѣницѣта

игрѣя карти/игрѣя на картѣ 'play cards'

жадувам нещо/жадувам за нещо  
достигам нещо/достигам до нещо

'yearn/long for smth'  
'reach something'

## B. Personal and Impersonal Verbs

### Лични и безлични глаголи

Most of the verbs in Bulgarian are personal. They carry morphological information about the category of person, related to the Subject in their endings. The Subject of the sentence may either be expressed overtly or dropped:

#### Singular

1p.	Аз говоря./ Говоря.	'I am speaking.'
2p.	Играеш ли бридж?	'Do you play bridge?'
3p.	Пише.	'He/she is writing.'

#### Plural

1p.	Ще ходим на театър.	'We are going to the theatre.'
2p.	Излизате ли?	'Are you going out?'
3p.	Пяят.	'They are singing.'

Impersonal sentences do not have a grammatical subject.

According to their endings the verbs are (formally) in the third person singular. They usually denote:

#### a) natural phenomena

Вали.	'It's raining/snowing.'
Свечерява се.	'It's growing dark.'
Гърми.	'It's thundering.'
Застудява се.	'It is getting cold.'

#### In Russian:

Холодаёт.	'It is getting cold.'
Темнёт.	'It is growing dark.'

#### b) physical or mental states, desire or lack of desire

Спи ми се.	'I feel sleepy.'
Не ми се спи.	'I don't feel sleepy.'
Не ми се пие.	'I don't feel like drinking.'
Срам ме е.	'I am ashamed.'

#### In Russian:

Мне не спится.	'I don't feel sleepy.'
Мне стыдно.	'I am ashamed.'

#### c) Some verbs with modal meaning such as: има 'there is/are', няма

'there isn't/aren't'  
Тук има много хора.  
Няма никого в стаята.  
Тя може да дойде по-рано.  
Трябва да тръгваме.

може 'may', трябва 'must', etc.  
'There are a lot of people here.'  
'There is nobody in the room.'  
'She may come earlier.'  
'We have to be going.'

#### In Russian:

Её нет дома.	'She is not at home.'
Сдесь не было остановки.	'There was no stop here.'
Можно войти?	'May I come in?'

d) impersonal sentences may contain some other verbs, such as: изглежда 'it seems, струва ми се 'it seems to me', личи си 'it is clear/evident', вижда се, че 'it is apparent that'

Изглежда важно, че...	'It seems important that...'
Струва ми се, че няма да успеем да стигнем навреме.	'It seems (to me) we won't be able to get there on time.'
Личи си, че не сте прочели текста внимателно.	'It is evident you've not read the text carefully.'

#### In Russian:

Кажется, он её не слышал.	'He did not seem to have heard her.'
---------------------------	--------------------------------------

## C. Non-Reflexive and Reflexive Verbs

### Невъзвратни и възвратни глаголи

Non-Reflexive (or ordinary) verbs consist of a single lexical unit: четя 'to read', ходя 'to walk', пия 'to sing', etc.

Reflexive verbs are derived by adding the short forms of the Reflexive Personal Pronoun *се* and *си*:

обличам се	'to dress oneself'
почивам си	'to take a rest'
усмихвам се	'to smile'
мисля си	'to think'

a) Direct or true reflexive verbs. In semantic terms the Subject of the sentence is both Agent and Patient (or recipient of the action). The short form of the reflexive pronoun *се* may sometimes be replaced by *себе си*.

Деца̀та <i>се</i> измъха и <i>се</i> облякоха вѐче.	'The children have already washed and dressed (themselves).'
---	--



пйша (е)	'to write' - first conjugation
седя (и)	'to sit' - second conjugation
обйчам (а)	'to love' - third conjugation

#### Singular

		<i>First</i>	<i>Second</i>	<i>Third</i>
1р.	аз	пйша	седя	обйчам
2р.	ти	пйшеш	седйш	обйчаш
3р.	той/тя/то	пйше	седй	обйча

#### Plural

1р.	нйе	пйшем	седйм	обйчаме
2р.	вйе	пйшете	седйте	обйчате
3р.	те	пйшат	седят	обйчат

In Russian there are two conjugations:

		First 'to read'	Second 'to speak'
1р.	я	читаю	говорю
2р.	ты	читаешь	говоришь
3р.	он/она/оно	читает	говорит
1р.	мы	читаем	говорим
2р.	вы	читаете	говорите
3р.	онй	читают	говорят

## 2. Aspect

### Вид на глагола

In contrast to English the category of aspect has morphological indicators in Bulgarian. Each verb has forms for the **Imperfective** and for the **Perfective** aspects. They form a grammatical opposition:

a) The perfective aspect (свършен вид) indicates that the action of the verb has been or will be completed and emphasis is laid on the result of the action:

*Купихме* много въглища  
предй да започне зймата. 'We bought plenty of coal  
before the winter started.'

b) The imperfective aspect (несвършен вид) does not specify the completion of the action.

Тя обикновено си *кунува*  
готови дрехи. 'She usually buys her ready  
made clothes.'

Thus, the same verbal action may be described from different perspectives by using either the perfective or the imperfective aspect of a verb:

Цял ден *печатах* на машина и  
*напечатах* трийсет  
страници.

*Учих* два часа и *научих*  
добре урдка.

'I've been typing all day long  
and I've typed out thirty  
pages.'

'I spent two hours studying  
and I've learned my lesson  
quite well.'

In Russian verbs also form a grammatical opposition of imperfective and perfective aspect. Imperfective aspect verbs are used in the (1) present and (2) future complex tense, and perfective aspect verbs are used in the (3) past and (4) future simple tense:

(1) Я читаю книгу.	'I am reading a book.'
(2) Я буду читать долго.	'I will read for a long time.'
(3) Я прочитал книгу.	'I read (finished reading).'
(4) Я прочитаю книгу и пойду гулять.	'I will finish reading the book and will go out for a walk.'

## 3. The Tense System

The verbs in Bulgarian occur in nine tense forms. Three of them are simple: the Present, the Aorist Past and the Imperfect Past tenses. The remaining six tenses are compound: the Perfect, the Past Perfect, the Future, the Future in the Past, the Future Perfect and the Future in the Past tenses.

1. Present tense (Сегашно време)	<i>живея</i> 'I live' 'I'm living'	<i>мисля</i> 'I think' 'I'm thinking'
2. Imperfect Past (Минало несвършено време)	<i>живеех</i> 'I was living' 'I used to live'	<i>мислех</i> 'I was thinking' 'I used to think'
3. Aorist Past (Минало свършено време)	<i>живях</i> 'I lived'	<i>мислих</i> 'I thought'
4. Perfect (Минало неопределено време)	<i>живял съм</i> 'I've lived'	<i>мислил съм</i> 'I've thought'
5. Past perfect (Минало предва- рително време)	<i>бях живял</i> 'I had lived'	<i>бях мислил</i> 'I had thought'

6. Future (Будеце време)	<i>ще живѐя</i> 'I'll live'	<i>ще мисля</i> 'I'll think'
7. Future in the Past (Будеце време в миналото)	<i>щях да живѐя</i> 'I was going to live'	<i>щях да мисля</i> 'I was going to think'
8. Future Perfect (Будеце предвари- телно време)	<i>ще съм живѐл</i> 'I will have lived'	<i>ще съм мислил</i> 'I will have thought'
9. Future Perfect in the Past (Будеце предварително време в миналото)	<i>щях да съм живѐл</i> 'I would have lived'	<i>щях да съм мислил</i> 'I would have thought'

In Russian the system of tenses is simpler - verbs occur in three tenses - Present (настоящее время - читаю), future simple and future compound (будущее время простое и будущее сложное - буду читать, прочитаю) and past tense (прошедшее время - прочитал).

### 3.1. The Present Tense

#### Сегашно време

The present Tense is formed by the present stem of the verbs plus personal endings: if the present stem ends in *-e*, the verb is of 1st conjugation, in *-и* - of 2nd conjugation and in *-а* or *-я* - of 3rd conjugation:

	1st conjugation	2nd conjugation	3rd conjugation
<i>аз</i>	<i>четà/живѐя</i>	<i>говòря/уча</i>	<i>хвѐрлям/нѐтам</i>
I	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask
<i>ти</i>	<i>четѐш/живѐеш</i>	<i>говòриш/учиш</i>	<i>хвѐрляш/нѐташ</i>
you	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask
<i>той/тя/то</i>	<i>четѐ/живѐе</i>	<i>говòри/учи</i>	<i>хвѐрля/нѐта</i>
he/she/it	reads/lives	speaks/studies	throws/asks
<i>нѐе</i>	<i>четѐм/живѐем</i>	<i>говòрим/учим</i>	<i>хвѐрляме/нѐтаме</i>
we	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask
<i>вѐе</i>	<i>четѐте/живѐете</i>	<i>говòрите/учите</i>	<i>хвѐрляте/нѐтате</i>
you	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask
<i>те</i>	<i>четàт/живѐят</i>	<i>говòрят/учат</i>	<i>хвѐрлят/нѐтат</i>
they	read/live	speak/study	throw/ask

In Russian there are two conjugations of the verbs in the present tense - 1st conjugation читаю, читаешь and 2nd conjugation говорю,

говоришь.

### Phonetic rules

When the endings *-а*, *-я* for the first person singular) and *-ам*, *-ят* (for the third person plural) are stressed they are pronounced: [а], [ја] and [ət], [jət]:

аз	вървя	[vəɾ`vjə]	'I walk'
	четà	[čɛ`tə]	'I read'
	стоя	[sto`jə]	'I am standing'
те	вървят	[vəɾ`vjət]	'they walk'
	четàт	[čɛ`tət]	'they read'
	стоят	[sto`jət]	'they are standing'

The stress remains unchanged in all forms of the Present Tense.

Examples: зная 'to know' - first conjugation.

	Singular	Plural
1p.	знàя	знàем
2p.	знàеш	знàете
3p.	знàе	знàят
	рабòтя 'to work' - second conjugation	
	Singular	Plural
1p.	рабòтя	рабòтим
2p.	рабòтиш	рабòтите
3p.	рабòти	рабòтят
	разбѝрам - 'to understand' - third conjugation	
	Singular	Plural

1p.	разбѝрам	разбѝраме
2p.	разбѝраш	разбѝрате
3p.	разбѝра	разбѝрат

The following verbs are irregular: съм 'to be', да дам 'to give' and the verb ям 'to eat':

	сьм 'to be' - auxiliary verb	
	Singular	Plural
1p.	аз съм	нѐе сме
2p.	ти си	вѐе сте
3p.	той/тя/то е	те са

The forms of the verb съм are not stressed except after the negative particle не.



The correspondent Russian verb **быть** is usually omitted in the present tense. The future tense is **я буду, ты будешь**, and the past tense **я был, была, мы были**.

The Bulgarian verbs for 'to eat' and 'to give':

	Singular	Plural
1p.	ям/дам	ядём/дадём
2p.	ядеш/дадеш	ядете/дадете
3p.	яде/даде	ядат/дадат

The consonant sounds [k] and [g] are changed into [č] and [ž] when they occur before the stem vowel [e] in verbs of the first conjugation:

	мога 'can' текà 'to flow'	
	Singular	Plural
1p.	мога/текà	можем/течём
2p.	можеш/течеш	можете/течете
3p.	може/течè	могат/текат

In Russian similar phonetic changes are observed - **могù, можешь, текù, течешь**.

Use:

Verbs in the present tense may denote:

a) actions, events or states that usually take place at the moment of speech:

Някой <b>чука</b> на вратата.	'Someone is knocking at the door.'
<b>Предупреждавам</b> ви, че ще ви струва скъпо.	'I am warning you it's going to be expensive.'
<b>Не искате</b> ли чаша чай?	'Wouldn't you like a cup of tea?'

In Russian:

Сейчас я читаю интересную книгу.	'Now I am reading an interesting book.'
----------------------------------	---

b) repeated or habitual action:

Никога <b>не закувам</b> в неделя.	'I never eat breakfast on Sundays.'
Тя винаги <b>пристига</b> полдн вин час по-рано.	'She always arrives half an hour earlier.'
Тук рядко <b>валя</b> дъжд.	'It seldom rains here.'
Напоследък често го <b>посещавам</b> .	'Recently I've been visiting him quite often.'

In Russian:

Обычно по вечерам я смотрю телевидение.	'I usually watch Tv in the evening.'
---	--------------------------------------

c) general timeless statements, laws, regulations, etc.

Звукът <b>се разпространява</b> по-добре във водата, отколкото във въздуха.	'Sound travels better in water than in air.'
Когато времето е влажно, алуминият <b>не се окислява</b> .	'Aluminium doesn't oxidize in wet weather.'

In Russian:

Земля вращается вокруг Солнца.	'The Earth turns round the Sun.'
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

d) past actions or events - this is the so called 'historical present'.

The use of present tense forms instead of past tense ones makes the narrative more vivid. It is also used in sports commentaries.

През 681 година Византия <b>признава</b> българската държава.	'The Bulgarian state received recognition by Byzantium in 681.'
---	---

e) future actions

Влакът ми <b>тръгва</b> в 11.30.	'My train leaves at 11.30.'
Той <b>се връща</b> от Варна следващата седмица.	'He is coming back from Varna next week.'

Verbs of Imperfective aspect are most often used in the Present tense.

f) the present tense forms of verbs of the perfective aspect are often used in compound sentences to denote repeated or future action:

Той ще си купи книгата, която му <b>препоръчам</b> .	'He'll buy the book I recommend to him.'
--	--

Present tense verbs of the imperfective aspect often combine with the past tense forms of verbs of perception, such as:

мисля	'think'
усещам	'feel'
струва ми се	'it seems to me'
сънувам	'dream', etc.
Сънувах, че <b>лети</b> с балон над атлантическия океан.	'I dreamt I was flying over the Atlantic in a balloon.'
Мислех, че <b>сънувам</b> .	'I thought I was dreaming.'

Почувства, че се *изчервява*. 'She felt she was blushing.'

Both perfective and imperfective present forms are used after the conjunction *да* (and note that the verb forms after *да* are **always** present tense forms):

Искаш ли <i>да</i> ти <i>донесà</i> нещо?	'Would you like me to get something for you?'
Областният управител разпореди <i>да</i> се <i>закриè</i> болницата.	'The district court ordered the hospital closed.'
Ще дойдеш ли <i>да</i> ми <i>помогнеш</i> ?	'Will you come and help me?'
Той не обича <i>да</i> <i>работи</i> нощем.	'He doesn't like working at night.'

Bulgarian	English
Present Tense	Present Continuous Present Simple Present Perfect Present Perfect Continuous

### 3.2. The Imperfect Past *Минало несвършено време*

#### Formation:

The Past Imperfect Tense is formed from the present stems of the verbs, which undergo some changes plus personal endings. The stress of the present stem is preserved.

#### Personal endings:

	Singular	Plural
1.	-х	-хме
2.	-ше	-хте
3.	-ше	-ха

#### First conjugation verbs

чета 'to read'      пиша 'to write'

#### Singular

1p.	четах	пишех
2p.	четеше	пишеше
3p.	четеше	пишеше

#### Plural

1p.	четяхме	пишехме
2p.	четяхте	пишехте
3p.	четяха	пишеха

#### Second conjugation verbs

вървя 'to walk'      мисля 'to think'      мълча 'to be silent'

#### Singular

1p. вървях	мислех	мълчях
2p. вървеше	мислеше	мълчеше
3p. вървеше	мислеше	мълчеше

#### Plural

1p. вървяхме	мислехме	мълчяхме
2p. вървяхте	мислехте	мълчяхте
3p. вървяха	мислеха	мълчаха

#### Third conjugation verbs

The past stem is the same as the present stem.

питам 'to ask'      отговарям 'to answer'      качвам се 'to climb'

#### Singular

1p. питах	отговарях	качвах се
2p. питаше	отговаряше	качваше се
3p. питаше	отговаряше	качваше се

#### Plural

1p. питахме	отговаряхме	качвахме се
2p. питахте	отговаряхте	качвахте се
3p. питаха	отговаряха	качваха се

Some verbs of the second conjugation and all the verbs of the third conjugation have coinciding forms for the Imperfect and the Aorist past tenses, with the exception of the second and third person singular. The context and situation of the utterance usually help to distinguish between the two tenses.

Examples: горя 'to burn', обичам 'to love'

#### Imperfect Past

#### Aorist Past

#### Singular

1p. горях	обичах	горях обичах
2p. гореше	обичаше	горя обича
3p. гореше	обичаше	горя обича



Plural			
1p. <i>горяхме</i>	<i>обичахме</i>	<i>горяхме</i>	<i>обичахме</i>
2p. <i>горяхте</i>	<i>обичахте</i>	<i>горяхте</i>	<i>обичахте</i>
3p. <i>горяха</i>	<i>обичаха</i>	<i>горяха</i>	<i>обичаха</i>

The Imperfect Past forms of the auxiliary verb съм 'to be' coincide with the Aorist Past forms:

Singular	Plural
1p. аз бях	ние бяхме
2p. ти беше (бе)	вие бяхте
3p. той/тя/то беше (бе)	те бяха

#### Use:

The Imperfect Past Tense frequently co-occurs with the Aorist Past tense. They are used together to describe or narrate past events.

a) The Imperfect Past tense usually denotes action in progress at a mentioned point in the past.

Вратата се отвори и видях, че цялото ѝ лице <i>гредеше</i> от щастие.	'The door opened and I saw that her whole face was shining with happiness.'
Обърнах се. Тя ме <i>гледаше</i> с укор.	'I turned. She was looking at me reproachfully.'

The Imperfect Past brings into perspective the duration of the past events and in this respect partly corresponds to the English Past Continuous Tense but may also be translated with the English Past Simple Tense.

*Седях* и *гледах* морето. 'I was sitting and looking at  
the sea/I sat looking at the sea.'

b) The Imperfect Past Tense is also used to denote habitual or repeated actions in the past. Its English translation may contain 'used to + Infinitive', 'would + Infinitive', Past Simple or Past Continuous forms.

Често <i>се чувствах</i> виновен за това.	'I often felt guilty about this.'
Когато това се случи, чето <i>се виждах</i> с Мария, а и <i>ходех</i> много на опера.	'At the time it happened I was seeing a lot of Maria and I was going to the opera a lot.'
Тя често го <i>чуваше</i> да си мърмори недоволно.	'She would often hear him grumbling to himself.'
Когато бях малък, винаги	'When I was a child we always

*ходехме* на море през август.

На връщане *оставахме* няколко дни при баба и дядо на село и *се връщахме* в София в началото на септември.

went on holiday to the seaside in August.'

On our way back we stayed with my grandparents in the country for a couple of days and came back to Sofia early in September.'

The Imperfect Past tense is used mainly with verbs of the Imperfective Aspect.

c) The Imperfect Past tense is sometimes used to denote parallel activities.

Докато <i>обядвахме</i> , <i>се чудех</i> каква е причината за посещението ѝ.	'While we were having dinner I was wondering what the reason for her visit was.'
--	--

d) In conditional sentences the Imperfect Past Tense has some additional modal functions. It denotes past, present or future probable activities. Verbs of both perfective and imperfective aspect may be used in Conditional clauses.

Ако <i>имах</i> повече време, не бих чел, а щях да съм в момента на кино.	'If I had more time I wouldn't be reading, I would be at the cinema at the moment.'
--	---

The Bulgarian Imperfect Past Tense quite often corresponds to the English Past Simple Tense. In translating from English into Bulgarian the English Past Simple Tense is almost equally divided between the Imperfect and the Aorist Past tenses.

Вратата постоянно *се отваряше*. 'The door kept opening.'

В главата му <i>се въртеше</i> някакво изречение, останало от училище.	'A sentence, a remnant of his school days recurred to him.'
---	--

Те *се спогавдаха* добре двете, *не си завидваха* и *не си пречеа*.

'The two of them got on very well together, they didn't envy each other and did not hinder each other.'

Лоте *плачеше*, *натякваше*, *заплашваше*, че ще се върне в родната си.

'Lotte cried, nagged and threatened she would go back to her country.'

Известно време двамата

'For some time the two of them

мълчаливо *слизаха* по стъл-  
бите. were going down the stairs in  
silence.  
Той си я *спомняше* ясно. 'He remembered her clearly.'  
Възможността *изглеждаше*  
превъзходна. 'The opportunity seemed  
ideal.'  
*Трѣпкаше* и *трѣпнеше* проз-  
рачната дрѣха. 'The transparent robe  
shimmered and shook.'

As in Russian there is only one past tense the correspondent forms  
to the Bulgarian Past Imperfect are imperfective verbs in the past tense  
(прошедшее время).

An action in progress:

Russian	Bulgarian	English
Когда я писал	Докато пишех	'While I was writing
брат слы-	сма, брат ми слѹ-	letters my brother
шал музыку.	шаше музика.	was listening to
		music.'

Repeated action:

Во время каникул	През ваканцията	'During the holidays
я каждый день	аз всеки ден	I wrote to my mother
писал маме.	пишех на майка си.	every day.'

Bulgarian	English
Imperfect	Past Continuous
Past	Past Simple
Tense	used to + inf., would + inf.

### 3.3. The Aorist Past Tense

*Минало свършено време*

Formation:

Personal endings:

	Singular	Plural
1p.	-х	-хме
2p.	0 (no ending)	-хте
3p.	0 (no ending)	-ха

The verbs of each conjugation are further subdivided into classes  
according to the vowel in the past stem (which is an old infinitive stem).

Verbs of the first and second conjugation form the Aorist Past tense

from the **past stem** plus personal endings.

Examples:

#### First conjugation - present stem vowel [e]

пиша 'to write' четà 'to read' пѣя 'to sing'

##### Singular

1p. писах	чѣтох	пѣях
2p. писа	чѣте	пѣя
3p. писа	чѣте	пѣя

##### Plural

1p. писахме	чѣтохте	пѣяхме
2p. писахте	чѣтохте	пѣяхте
3p. писаха	чѣтоха	пѣяха

#### Second conjugation - present stem vowel [i]

говоря 'to speak' спя 'to sleep' вървя 'to walk'

##### Singular

1p. говорих	спях	вървях
2p. говори	спа	вървя
3p. говори	спа	вървя

##### Plural

1p. говорихме	спяхме	вървяхме
2p. говорихте	спяхте	вървяхте
3p. говориха	спяха	вървяха

#### Third conjugation - present stem vowels [a], [ja]

влизам 'to enter' отвàрям 'to open' стрѣлям 'to shoot'

##### Singular

1p. влизах	отвàрях	стрѣлях
2p. влиза	отвàря	стрѣля
3p. влиза	отвàря	стрѣля

##### Plural

1p. влизахме	отвàряхме	стрѣляхме
2p. влизахте	отвàряхте	стрѣляхте
3p. влизаха	отвàряха	стрѣляха

the verb *сам* 'to be' (auxiliary verb)

##### Singular

1p. аз бях	ние бяхме
2p. ти бѣше (бе)	вие бяхте
3p. той/тя/то бѣше (бе)	те бяха

##### Plural



The Russian equivalent is **быть** (infinitive) and the past tense has gender and plural: **был, была, было, были**.

Subdivision into classes according to the vowels of the past tense stems:

### First conjugation:

**Class 1** - the past stem vowel is [o] in all forms except in the second and third person singular.

да съблекà 'to undress'    да дам 'to give'    да дõйда 'to come'

#### Singular

1р. съблѣкох	дàдох	дойдòх
2р. съблѣче	дàде	дойдè
3р. съблѣче	дàде	дойдè

#### Plural

1р. съблѣкохме	дàдохме	дойдòхме
2р. съблѣкохте	дàдохте	дойдòхте
3р. съблѣкоха	дàдоха	дойдòха

Some other verbs belonging to the same class are:

четà 'to read'	ям 'to eat'
метà 'to sweep'	да доведà 'to bring along'
плетà 'to knit'	влекà 'to drag'
текà 'to flow/run'	крадà 'to steal'
растà 'to grow'	секà 'to cut down'

**Class 2** - the past stem vowel is [a]. No other changes occur in the stem. Over 400 verbs belong to this class.

Examples:]

да бѹтна 'to push/tip down'    да вдѣгна 'to pick up'    да лѣгна 'to lie down'

#### Singular

1р. бѹтнах	вдѣгнах	лѣгнах
2р. бѹтна	вдѣгна	лѣгна
3р. бѹтна	вдѣгна	лѣгна

#### Plural

1р. бѹтнахме	вдѣгнахме	лѣгнахме
2р. бѹтнахте	вдѣгнахте	лѣгнахте
3р. бѹтнаха	вдѣгнаха	лѣгнаха

The present stem vowel [e] is omitted in a number of verbs:

берà 'to pick'    перà 'to wash'

#### Singular

1р. брах	прах
2р. бра	пра
3р. бра	пра

#### Plural

1р. брахме	прахме
2р. брахте	прахте
3р. браха	праха

Some other verbs belonging to the same class are:

да лѣсна 'to polish', зовà 'to call by name/summon'  
да блѣсна 'to flash/glitter', ковà 'to hammer'  
да махна '1.to wave, 2.to put away', сновà 'to hurry up and down, to shuttle', etc.

**Class 3** - the past stem vowel is [a], preceded by a palatal consonant in the present stem. There are about 23 basic verbs, belonging to this class.

Examples:

кѣпя 'to bathe'    трепèря 'to shiver'    да сѣпя 'to pour'

#### Singular

1р. кѣпах	трепèрàх	сѣпах
2р. кѣпа	трепèрà	сѣпа
3р. кѣпа	трепèрà	сѣпа

#### Plural

1р. кѣпахме	трепèрàхме	сѣпахме
2р. кѣпахте	трепèрàхте	сѣпахте
3р. кѣпаха	трепèрàха	сѣпаха

Some other verbs belonging to this class are:

бѣбря 'to chatter', хàпя 'to bite', дрèмя 'to doze, to nod off', мѣмря 'to scold'

**Class 4** - the past stem vowel is [a] but some changes occur with the consonants preceding it. There are about 26 basic verbs, belonging to this class.

Examples of the consonant changes:

[ž] changes into [z]

да ка̀жа 'to say' 'to tell'    да вѣржа 'to tie'    режа 'to cut'

	<b>Singular</b>	
1р. ка̀зах	вѣрзах	рѣзах
2р. ка̀за	вѣрза	рѣза
3р. ка̀за	вѣрза	рѣза

	<b>Plural</b>	
1р. ка̀захме	вѣрзахме	рѣзахме
2р. ка̀захте	вѣрзахте	рѣзахте
3р. ка̀заха	вѣрзаха	рѣзаха

[ʒ] changes into [g]

лѣжа 'to tell lies'    стрѣжа 'to cut one's hair'    стѣржа 'to scrape'

	<b>Singular</b>	
1р. лѣгах	стрѣгах	стѣргах
2р. лѣга	стрѣга	стѣрга
3р. лѣга	стрѣга	стѣрга

	<b>Plural</b>	
1р. лѣгахме	стрѣгахме	стѣргахме
2р. лѣгахте	стрѣгахте	стѣргахте
3р. лѣгаха	стрѣгаха	стѣргаха

[č] changes into [k]

дѣвча 'to shew'    пла̀ча 'to weep, to cry'    тѣпча 'to trample on'

	<b>Singular</b>	
1р. дѣвках	пла̀ках	тѣпках
2р. дѣвка	пла̀ка	тѣпка
3р. дѣвка	пла̀ка	тѣпка

	<b>Plural</b>	
1р. дѣвкахме	пла̀кахме	тѣпкахме
2р. дѣвахте	пла̀кахте	тѣпкахте
3р. дѣвкаха	пла̀каха	тѣпкаха

[š] changes into [s]

бѣрша 'to wipe'    ми́рша 'to smell'    пи́ша 'to write'

	<b>Singular</b>	
1р. бѣрсах	ми́рсах	пи́сах

2р. бѣрса	ми́рса	пи́са
3р. бѣрса	ми́рса	пи́са

**Plural**

1р. бѣрсахме	ми́рсахме	пи́сахме
2р. бѣрсахте	ми́рсахте	пи́сахте
3р. бѣрсаха	ми́рсаха	пи́саха

[št] changes into [sk]

дра̀щя 'to scratch'

	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
1р. дра̀сках	дра̀сках	дра̀скахме
2р. дра̀ска	дра̀ска	дра̀скахте
3р. дра̀ска	дра̀ска	дра̀скаха

**Class 5** - the past stem vowel is [a], usually preceded by a palatal consonant. However, the consonant preceding the ending of the present stem is not palatal. There are six basic (or primary) verbs, belonging to this class, which form about 100 verbs by prefixation.

Examples:

да простра̀ 'to spread'    да допра̀ 'to touch'

	<b>Singular</b>
1р. простра̀х	допра̀х
2р. простра̀	допра̀
3р. простра̀	допра̀

	<b>Plural</b>
1р. простра̀хме	допра̀хме
2р. простра̀хте	допра̀хте
3р. простра̀ха	допра̀ха

**Class 6** - the past stem vowel is [a] preceded by [j]. Very few verbs belong to this class.

Examples:

тра̀я 'to last/endure'    ва̀я 'to sculpture'

	<b>Singular</b>	<b>Plural</b>
1р. тра̀ях	ва̀ях	тра̀яхме    ва̀яхме
2р. тра̀я	ва̀я	тра̀яхте    ва̀яхте
3р. тра̀я	ва̀я	тра̀яха    ва̀яха

**Class 7** - there is no past stem vowel in this class. The present stem vowel is omitted and the preceding vowel of the lexical root remains. The most important group of verbs belonging to this class are those formed



with the very productive suffix **-ея**. This class contains about 250 basic verbs.

Examples:

живе́я 'to live'	горде́я се 'to be proud'	пе́я 'to sing'
<b>Singular</b>		
1р. живя́х	гордя́х се	пях
2р. живя́	гордя́ се	пя
3р. живя́	гордя́ се	пя
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. живя́хме	гордя́хме се	пяхме
2р. живя́хте	гордя́хте се	пяхте
3р. живя́ха	гордя́ха се	пяха
пожела́я 'to wish/desire',	кри́я 'to hide',	да чу́я 'to hear'
<b>Singular</b>		
1р. пожела́х	кри́х	чух
2р. пожела́	кри́	чу
3р. пожела́	кри́	чу
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. пожела́хме	кри́хме	чу́хме
2р. пожела́хте	кри́хте	чу́хте
3р. пожела́ха	кри́ха	чу́ха
плю́я 'to spit',	гуля́я 'to carouse'	шля́я се 'to loiter' to feast'
<b>Singular</b>		
1р. плю́х	гуля́х	шля́х се
2р. плю́	гуля́	шля́ се
3р. плю́	гуля́	шля́ се
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. плю́хме	гуля́хме	шля́хме се
2р. плю́хте	гуля́хте	шля́хте се
3р. плю́ха	гуля́ха	шля́ха се

## Second Conjugation

**Class 1** - the past stem vowel is [i], that is, the same as the present stem vowel. There are over 1000 basic verbs belonging to this class.

The verbs in this class may be further subdivided according to stress rules:

a) the stress is on the **final syllable**:

благодаря́ 'to thank'	бро́я 'to count'	да решá 'to decide, solve'
<b>Singular</b>		
1р. благодаря́х	бро́их	реша́х
2р. благодаря́	бро́й	реша́
3р. благодаря́	бро́й	реша́
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. благодаря́хме	бро́ихме	реша́хме
2р. благодаря́хте	бро́ихте	реша́хте
3р. благодаря́ха	бро́иха	реша́ха

b) the stress is **not** on the final syllable:

мы́сля 'to think',	пла́ша 'to frighten',	пу́ша 'to smoke'
<b>Singular</b>		
1р. мы́слих	пла́ших	пу́ших
2р. мы́сли	пла́ши	пу́ши
3р. мы́сли	пла́ши	пу́ши
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. мы́слихме	пла́шихте	пу́шихте
2р. мы́слихте	пла́шихте	пу́шихте
3р. мы́слиха	пла́шиха	пу́шиха

**Class 2** - the past stem vowel is [ja] (i.e. [a] after a palatal consonant, spelt with **я**). There are about 73 basic verbs belonging to this class. The stress is on the **final syllable**:

лета́ 'to fly',	звѣ́ня 'to ring',	гора́ 'to burn'
<b>Singular</b>		
1р. лета́х	звѣ́нях	гора́х
2р. лета́	звѣ́ня	гора́
3р. лета́	звѣ́ня	гора́
<b>Plural</b>		
1р. лета́хме	звѣ́няхме	гора́хме
2р. лета́хте	звѣ́няхте	гора́хте
3р. лета́ха	звѣ́няха	гора́ха

(Note the different pronunciation of present tense - аз лета́ [le`tjə] and the past tense - той лета́ [le`tja].)

**Class 3** - the vowel of the past stem is [a], preceded by the consonants [ž] and [č]:

Examples:  
държѝ 'to hold'

	лежѝ 'to lie'	бръмчѝ 'to buzz'
	<b>Singular</b>	
1р. държѝх	лежѝх	бръмчѝх
2р. държѝ	лежѝ	бръмчѝ
3р. държѝ	лежѝ	бръмчѝ

	<b>Plural</b>	
1р. държѝхме	лежѝхме	бръмчѝхме
2р. държѝхте	лежѝхте	бръмчѝхте
3р. държѝха	лежѝха	бръмчѝха

Some exceptions, belonging to this class, are:

спя 'to sleep'      кѝля 'to slaughter', рѝша 'to comb'

	<b>Singular</b>	
1р. спѝх	клѝх	рѝсах
2р. спѝ	клѝ	рѝса
3р. спѝ	клѝ	рѝса

	<b>Plural</b>	
1р. спѝхме	клѝхме	рѝсахме
2р. спѝхте	клѝхте	рѝсахте
3р. спѝха	клѝха	рѝсахѝ

### Third Conjugation

The past stem is the same as the present stem. A lot of verbs belong to this category, since a great number of verbs are formed with the very productive verb-forming suffixes: -а(м), -ва-, -ува-, -ка-, -ира-, -изира-, -аса-, -уса-, -оса-, -дуса-, -туса-.

Examples:

да боядѝсам	бързам	стрѝлям
'to paint'	'to hurry'	'to shoot'

	<b>Singular</b>	
1р. боядѝсах	бързах	стрѝлях
2р. боядѝса	бърза	стрѝля
3р. боядѝса	бърза	стрѝля

	<b>Plural</b>	
1р. боядѝсахме	бързахме	стрѝляхме
2р. боядѝсахте	бързахте	стрѝляхте

Зр. боядѝсаха  
купѝвам  
'to buy'

1р. купѝвах
2р. купѝва
3р. купѝва

1р. купѝвахме
2р. купѝвахте
3р. купѝвахѝ

бързаха  
кашлям  
'to cough'

<b>Singular</b>
кашлях
кашля
кашля

<b>Plural</b>
кашляхме
кашляхте
кашляха

стрѝляха  
вечѝрям  
'to dine/have supper'

<b>Singular</b>
вечѝрях
вечѝря
вечѝря

<b>Plural</b>
вечѝряхме
вечѝряхте
вечѝряха

Use:

The verbs of the Aorist Past tense generally denote distinct past

events.

Струната се скѝса.

'The string broke.'

Състѝзѝниѝто свърши.

'The race finished.'

Мъглата се вдѝгна.

'The fog lifted.'

Порѝзах се с бръснѝча.

'I cut myself with the razor.'

Тя влѝзе в магазина и

'She went into the shop and

пойска едѝн бял хляб.

asked for a loaf of white bread.'

Живѝх във Варна до чѝтири-  
надесѝтгодишна вѝзраст.

'I lived in Varna until I was 14.'

The Aorist Past Tense is frequently used for narration. Past events are usually presented as a succession of episodes:

Прѝтъркулнах се до ръба  
на леглото и сѝднах. За-  
пѝлих лампата и поглѝд-  
нах часѝвника. След това  
вдѝгнах слушѝлката и да-  
дох нѝмера на телефонѝската.

'I rolled over to the edge of the bed and sat up. I switched on the lamp and looked at my watch. Then I picked up the phone and gave the operator the number.'

With verbs of the Imperfective Aspect the Aorist past Tense focuses on the general occurrence of the action without any definite or concrete result.

Кѝдѝ бѝше? Търсѝх те на-  
всѝкъде.

'Where were you? I looked for you all over the place.'



The Aorist and the Imperfect Past Tenses are often used together in sentences describing past events.

*Забелязах*, че кибритената клечка *трепереше* в пръстите ми. 'I noticed that the match was shaking between my fingers.'

The Russian equivalent is the Past tense (прошедшее время). The difference is that the Bulgarian Aorist tense verbs have personal endings while in Russian they change only in gender and number: писал, писала, писало, писали wrote'; читал, читала, читало, читали 'read'.

The Bulgarian Aorist Past Tense is most often translated with the Past Simple Tense in English:

Класът *избухна* в смях. 'The class burst into laughter.'  
Той *задържаше* рещото. 'He kept the change.'  
Човекът *поклати* отрицателно главă. 'The man shook his head.'

Bulgarian	English
The Aorist	Past Simple Tense

### 3.4. The Perfect Tense

*Минало неопределено време*

#### Formation:

The Bulgarian Perfect Tense is formed from the Present Tense form of the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be' plus the Active Aorist Past Participle of the main verb. The Participle is formed by substituting the ending *-х* for the first person singular of the Aorist Past tense form with the suffix *-л*:

работих 'I worked'	работил съм 'I have worked'
гледах 'I watched'	гледал съм 'I have watched'

In some cases the consonants [d] and [t] are dropped out:

четох 'I read'	чел съм 'I have read'
навях се 'I bent down'	навъл съм се 'I have bent down'

The Active Aorist past Participle has a zero ending for the Masculine Singular, *-а* for Feminine Singular, *-о* for Neuter Singular and *-и* for the Plural. The Participle is used as a component of compound tense forms and as an Attribute.

	Singular	
Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
1р. аз съм писал	аз съм писала	
	'I have written'	
2р. ти си писал	ти си писала	ти си писало
	'you have written'	
3р. той е писал	тя е писала	то е писало
	'he/she/it has written'	

Plural	
1р. ние сме писали	'we have written'
2р. вие сте писали	'you have written'
3р. те са писали	'they have written'

#### Word order

When the Participle is at the beginning of a sentence it is followed by the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be':

Чел съм тази книга.	'I have read this book.'
Гледал ли си този филм?	'Have you seen this film?'

If a sentence begins with some other word (a pronoun, a negative particle, an adverbial, etc.) the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be' precedes the Participle.

Не съм гледал този филм.	'I haven't seen this film.'
Вече сме обядвали.	'We have already had lunch.'
Струва ми се, че съм слъшала тази песен.	'I seem to have heard this song.'

The short form of the personal pronouns *ме, те, го, я... ми, ти, му, ѝ...* (accusative and dative) and the reflexive particles *се, си* follow the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be', except in the third person singular, when they precede the forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be':

1р. аз съм го питал/а/о	'I've asked him.'
2р. ти си го питал/а/о	'You've asked him.'
3р. тоѝ/тя/тоѝ го е питал/а/о	'He/she/it has asked him.'

1р. ние сме го питали	'We've asked him.'
2р. вие сте го питали	'You've asked him.'
3р. те са го питали	'They've asked him.'

Тя <b>си</b> е облякла новата рокия.	'She has put on her new dress.'
Те са <b>си</b> променили адре- са.	'They have changed their address.'

When there are two pronouns - accusative and dative - the accusative follows the dative:

Аз съм му го дал/а/о	'I've given it to him/her/it.'
Обяснил/а съм й ги	'I've explained them to her.'

The interrogative particle *ли* is placed after the participle:  
Ти гледал **ли** си го? 'Have you seen it?'

In the indicative form the stress falls on the participle and the Auxiliary verb forms are not stressed. However, in the Negative form both the Auxiliary verb and the participle are stressed:

Чел съм го	'I've read it.'
Не съм го чел	'I haven't read it.'

#### Use:

The Perfect tense (минало неопределено време) refers to some event or action in the past, which is linked to or relevant for the present through its result, its consequences or in some other way. That means that the past event expressed by the Perfect Tense has affected the present stage of things.

Бил съм в Пловдив.	'I have been to Plovdiv.'
Той не е пристигнал още.	'He hasn't arrived yet.'
Телевизорът на майка ми се е повредил.	'My mother's TV set has broken down.'
Прочел ли си статията, коя- то ти дадох?	'Have you read the paper I gave you?'

Generally the time of the action denoted by the Perfect Tense is not specified. It is, however, understood as more or less recent from the point of view of the moment of speaking.

The Russian equivalent is again the Past tense (прошедшее время):

Russian	Bulgarian	English
Я читал эту книгу. Чел съм тази книга.		'I have read this book.'

The Bulgarian Perfect Tense (минало неопределено време) roughly corresponds to the English Present Perfect Tense in some of its functions:

Нали не си изгубила биле- та?	'You haven't lost the ticket, have you?'
Мисля, че не са разбрали разликата между свършения и несвършения вид.	'I think they have not grasped the difference between the perfective and imperfective aspect.'

Чувал съм всички твои аргументи.	'I have heard all your arguments before.'
-------------------------------------	--

With the Bulgarian Perfect Tense the time of the action may be specified in some cases, although the emphasis remains on the action and its consequences. Then the English translation equivalents are usually in the Past Simple Tense:

- Обаждал ли си се днес?	'Did you phone today?'
- Да, обаждал съм се. Около 9 часа.	'Yes, I did. At about 9.00.'

Verbs of the imperfective aspect, used in the Perfect Tense (минало неопределено време) often co-occur with adverbs:

понякога	'sometimes'
често	'often, frequently'
рядко	'rarely, seldom'
винаги	'always'
някога	'ever'
никога	'never', etc.

Понякога съм закъснявала за срещите си.	'I have sometimes been late for my appointments.'
Често съм мислил за това.	'I've often thought about it.'
Винаги сме го смятали за изключително сериозен. човек.	'We've always considered him an extremely reliable person.'

Because of its connection with the moment of speaking the Perfect tense frequently occurs in conversations and communications dealing with the state of things at present.

Защо си толкова груба с него? Какво е направил?	'Why are you so rude to him? What has he done?'
Добре ли се чувстваш? От- давна не си ходила на ле- кар.	'Do you feel well? It's been a long time since you've seen a doctor for a checkup.'



When used with verbs of perfective aspect the Perfect tense usually denotes some state.

Мисля, че черешите	'I believe the cherries are
са узрели.	ripe/have ripened.'
Водата в радиатора	'The water in the radiator has
е замръзнала.	frozen.'
Реката е почти пресъхнала.	'The river is almost dry.'

The Perfect tense is often used in questions and negative statements:

Никога не съм очаквала	'I've never expected a miracle
да стане чудо.	to happen.'
Случвало ли ти се е нещо	'Has anything similar happened
подобно досега?	to you before?'

The Perfect tense sometimes occurs in Subordinate Clauses, qualifying verbs, such as: *мисля* 'to think', *зная* 'to know', *разбирам* 'to understand', 'to realize', *казвам* 'to say/tell', *усещам* 'to feel', *изглежда* 'it seems', etc., meaning actions preceding those of the main clause.

Скоро ще разберат, че са	'They'll soon realize they've
сгрешили.	made a mistake.'
Мислиш ли, че той ни	'Do you think he has betrayed
е предат?	us?'
Трябва да му кажа, че вече	'I must tell him they have
са се разбрали.	already settled their
	argument.'

Bulgarian	English
Perfect	Present Perfect
Tense	Past simple

### 3.5. The Past Perfect Tense

#### *Минало предварително време*

##### Formation:

The Bulgarian Past Perfect Tense is formed from the Past tense forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be' plus the Active Aorist Participle of the main verb.

Singular	
1p. аз бях замънал/а	'I had left'

2p. ти беше замънал/а/о	'you had left'
3p. той/тя/то беше замънал/а/о	'he/she/it had left'

##### Plural

1p. ние бяхме замънали	'we had left'
2p. вие бяхте замънали	'you had left'
3p. те бяха замънали	'they had left'

##### Word Order

The Auxiliary verb is usually placed before the Participle:

<i>Бяхме</i> поканили и брат й.	'We had also invited her
	brother.'

<i>Бяха</i> ли си отишли гостите,	'Had the guests left when you
когато ми се обади?	rang me up?'

The short form of the personal pronouns *ме, те, го, я... ми, ти, му, ѝ...* (accusative and dative), the reflexive particles *се, си* and the interrogative particle *ли* are placed between the Auxiliary verb and the Participle:

Беше <i>се</i> обръснал и обля-	'He had shaved and dressed.'
къл.	

Баща ти беше <i>ли</i> се върнал,	'Was your father back when you
когато се прибра снощи?	got home last night?'

When there are two short pronoun forms the dative precedes the accusative.

Бях <i>му го</i> дал вече.	'I had already given it to him.'
----------------------------	----------------------------------

The negative particle *не* precedes the two components of the Past Perfect Tense - the Auxiliary verb and the Participle:

Отдавна <i>не</i> бях се срещал	'I had not met my friend for a
с приятеля си.	long time.'

##### Use:

The Past Perfect Tense denotes actions or states prior to some moment in the past. The Bulgarian Past Perfect tense roughly corresponds to the English Past Perfect Tense or to the Past Perfect Continuous. (Sometimes its English translation equivalents may be in the Past Simple or Past Perfect Continuous Tense).

Когато пристигнах, тя ве-	'When I arrived she had al-
че беше чакала на опашка-	ready been waiting in the
та за билети половин час.	queue for tickets for half an
	hour.'

Бях се събудил вече, когато звънна будилникът.	'I had already woken up when my alarm clock went off.'
Не беше съвсем непознат - бях го срещал веднъж преди това.	'He wasn't exactly a stranger. I had met him once before.'
Тя носеше бяло копринено шалче. Бях ѝ го подарил за рождения ѝ ден.	'She wore a white silk scarf. I had given it to her as a birthday present.'

### 3.6. The Future Tense

#### Бъдеще време

##### Formation:

The Future Tense is formed from the future auxiliary particle *ще* plus the Present Tense form of the main verb. The auxiliary particle usually precedes the Present Tense form of the main verb.

##### Singular

1р. аз ще изляза	'I'll go out'
2р. ти ще излезеш	'you'll go out'
3р. той/тя/то ще излезе	'he/she/it will go out'

##### Plural

1р. ние ще излезем	'we'll go out'
2р. вие ще излезете	'you'll go out'
3р. те ще излязат	'they'll go out'

In negative sentences the auxiliary particle *ще* is replaced by the form *няма да*. Negative forms with *не ще* still occur (for example in poetry) but are rather obsolete.

##### Singular

1р. аз няма да се върна	'I won't come back'
2р. ти няма да се върнеш	'you won't come back'
3р. той/тя/то няма да се върне	'he/she/it won't come back'

##### Plural

1р. ние няма да се върнем	'we won't come back'
2р. вие няма да се върнете	'you won't come back'
3р. те няма да се върнат	'they won't come back'

##### Word Order

The interrogative particle *ли* is added after the main verb to form interrogative sentences.

Тя ще закъснее ли?	'Will she be late?'
--------------------	---------------------

In the negative-interrogative form of the Future Tense the particle *ли* is placed after *няма*:

Няма ли и ти да отидеш?	'Won't you go too?'
-------------------------	---------------------

The short personal, possessive and reflexive pronoun forms stand between the auxiliary particle and the main verb:

Ще <i>му</i> помогна.	'I'll help him.'
Няма да <i>им</i> кажем.	'We will not tell them.'
Ще <i>се</i> срещнем ли довечера?	'Will we meet tonight?'
Ще <i>си</i> го купя.	'I'll buy it.'

If there are two pronoun forms the accusative stands after the dative:

Ще <i>му</i> го обясниш ли?	'Will you explain it to him?'
Няма ли да <i>й</i> го дадеш?	'Aren't you going to give it to her?'
Ще <i>ви</i> ги покажа.	'I'll show them to you.'

### THE FUTURE TENSE OF THE VERB *СЪМ*

The verb *съм* 'to be' has two forms for the Future Tense in Bulgarian. The forms in brackets are less frequent. The forms with *бъда* are stylistically neutral and are preferable to use.

#### Positive Statements

##### Singular

1р. аз ще бъда (ще съм)	'I will be'
2р. ти ще бъдеш (ще си)	'you will be'
3р. той ще бъде (ще е)	'he will be'
тя ще бъде (ще е)	'she will be'
то ще бъде (ще е)	'it will be'

##### Plural

1р. ние ще бъдем (ще сме)	'we will be'
2р. вие ще бъдете (ще сте)	'you will be'
3р. те ще бъдат (ще са)	'they will be'

#### Negative Statements

##### Singular

1р. аз няма да бъда (няма да съм)	'I won't be'
2р. ти няма да бъдеш (няма да си)	'you won't be'
3р. той няма да бъде (няма да е)	'he won't be'
тя няма да бъде (няма да е)	'she won't be'



то няма да бъде (няма да е) 'it won't be'

### Plural

1р. ние няма да бъдем (няма да сме) 'we won't be'  
 2р. вие няма да бъдете (няма да сте) 'you won't be'  
 3р. те няма да бъдат (няма да са) 'they won't be'

The Russian future tense of the verb **быть** is quite similar:

1 р. я буду, не буду мы будем, не будем  
 2р. ты будешь, не будешь вы будете, не будете  
 3р. он/она/оно будет, не будет они будут, не будут

### Use:

The Future Tense is used to denote some action or state, which is supposed or expected to take place at a time following the moment of speech.

Къде ще живёете, когато 'Where are you going to live  
 се ожёните? when you get married?'

Няма да започнем вечерята 'We'll not start dinner  
 без нея. without her.'

The Future Tense may occur with verbs of both the Imperfective and the Perfective aspect. Perfective aspect verbs refer to the completion of a future activity, while imperfective aspect verbs denote repetition of future activities.

Утре ще стана в 6.30, ще 'Tomorrow I'll get up at 6.30,  
 закуся и ще отида да играя have breakfast and go to play  
 тенис. tennis.'

Цяла седмица ще ставам в 'For a whole week I'll be  
 6.30, ще закусям редовно getting up at 6.30, I'll be  
 и ще ходя на тенис. having breakfast regularly and  
 then I'll be going to play  
 tennis.'

Няма да се видим вече. 'We'll never see each other  
 again.'

Няма да се виждаме повече. 'We'll stop meeting (going out  
 together).'

In contrast to English, there is no sequence of tenses rule in Bulgarian and the Future tense frequently occurs in Subordinate Clauses where the verb is either in Present or in some of the past tenses. Actually the Future Tense of the verb in the Subordinate Clause means that its

action will be completed after that of the verb of the main clause.

Вестниците съобщават, че 'The newspapers say it's going  
 утре ще вали сняг. to snow tomorrow.'

Съобщиха, че през нощта 'The weather forecast said  
 ще вали проливен дъжд. there would be heavy showers  
 during the night.'

In Conditional sentences the Future Tense verb in the main clause co-occurs with a present tense verb:

Ще те видя през август, 'I'll see you in August  
 ако не заминеш за чужбина. if you don't go abroad.'

Ако не му се обадиш днес 'If you don't give him a ring  
 до 7.30, утре ще бъде късно. by 7.30 tonight, it'll be too  
 late tomorrow.'

The Russian equivalents for future of perfective verbs is future simple tense (будущее простое) and for imperfective - future compound (будущее сложное) formed with the future tense of **быть** plus infinitive: 'will write'

Russian		Bulgarian	
Perfective	Imperfective	Perf.	Imperfect.
я напишу	буду писать	аз ще напиша	ще пиша
ты напишешь	будешь писать	ти ще напишеш	ще пишеш
он		той	
она напишет	будет писать	тя ще напише	ще пише
оно		то	
мы напишем	будем писать	ние ще напишем	ще пишем
вы напишете	будете писать	вие ще напишете	ще пишете
они напишут	будут писать	те ще напишат	ще пишат

The negative in the Russian future tense is formed by adding the negative particle: не напишу, не буду писать while in Bulgarian: няма да напиша, няма да пиша.

The Bulgarian Future Tense corresponds to the English Future Simple, Future Continuous, Future in the Past (reported speech) and to the other forms expressing futurity (to be going to, Present Simple and Present Continuous with verbs of movement, etc.)

Ще те чакам в три часа. 'I'll be waiting for you at  
 three o'clock.'

Няма да дойда на рождё- 'I'm not coming to the

ния ден.  
Кой ще ти гледа бебето утре  
вечер?

birthday party.  
'Who is going to baby-sit for  
you tomorrow evening?'

The forms of the Future may express the modal meaning of potential readiness or capability to perform some activity.

Ще напишеш ли статията в  
определения срок?

'Will you be able to finish  
the paper before the dead-  
line?'

The Future forms may have imperative modality when pronounced with the proper intonation.

Когато излезе, *ще го сле-*  
*диш* неотстъпно чак до  
влака. *Ще ходиш* нехайно и  
без да се обръщаш.

'When he comes out you must  
follow him steadily until he  
gets on the train. Try to walk  
casually without looking  
around.'

A specific use of the Future Tense is when it denotes habitual or repeated action in the past:

Винаги, когато отивам при  
мама, тя *ще ме попита* как  
съм и *ще ми пригответи* нещо  
за ядене.  
Спомням си каквo правеше  
баща ми, когато се връщаше  
от работа - *ще влезе, ще*  
*седне* до печката и *ще за-*  
*почне* да ме разпитва за  
училището.

'Whenever I go to my mother's  
place she would ask me how  
things are and would prepare  
something to eat.'  
'I remember what my father  
used to do when he came back  
from work - he would come in,  
sit near the stove and would  
start asking questions about  
school.'

Bulgarian

English

Future Simple Tense  
Future Continuous  
Future in the Past  
Other forms of expressing  
futurity - to be going to,  
Present Simple, etc.

### 3. 7. The Future in the Past Tense

#### Бъдеще време в миналото

##### Formation:

The forms of the Future in the Past Tense consist of the Imperfect Past Tense of the Auxiliary verb *ща* plus *да* plus the Present Tense forms of the main verb. Both the Auxiliary and the main verbs are inflected for person and number (but not gender) with respect to the Subject of the sentence.

##### Positive Statements:

###### Singular

1p. аз щях да кажа	'I was going to say'
2p. ти щеше да кажеш	'you were going to say'
3p. той/тя/то щеше да каже	'he/she/it was going to say'

###### Plural

1p. ние щяхме да кажем	'we were going to say'
2p. вие щяхте да кажете	'you were going to say'
3p. те щяха да кажат	'they were going to say'

##### Negative Statements:

###### Singular

1p. аз нямаше да питам	'I wasn't going to ask'
2p. ти нямаше да питаш	'you weren't going to ask'
3p. той/тя/то нямаше да пита	'he/she/it wasn't going to ask'

###### Plural

1p. ние нямаше да питаме	'we weren't going to ask'
2p. вие нямаше да питате	'you weren't going to ask'
3p. те нямаше да питат	'they weren't going to ask'

Note that the negative auxiliary *нямаше* does not change!

##### Word Order

The short forms of the personal pronouns and the reflexive particles *се, си* are after *да*:

Щях да *и* кажа по-рано. 'I was going to tell her earlier.'

Нямаше да *му* го дам. 'We weren't going to give it to him.'

Когà щяхте да *се* срещнете? 'When were you going to have a date?'

The interrogative particle *ли* is placed before *да*:

Те щяха *ли* да закусят? 'Were they going to have breakfast?'

##### Use:

The Future Tense in the Past (бъдеще време в миналото) is used



to denote simple facts, habitual actions and succession of events in the future viewed from the past. The Future in the Past forms are usually dependent and occur in Subordinate clauses depending on verbs in the past tenses (mainly in the Aorist Past Tense).

Ти не знаеше ли, че щях да ти простя?	'Didn't you know I would forgive you?'
Когато го видях последния път, щеше да започва нова работа.	'When I saw him last he was starting on a new job.'

The Future in the Past often refers to events almost happened but did not take place after all:

Ако не ме беше закарал с колата, щях да закъснея.	'If you had not given me a lift I would have been late.'
Тъкмо щях да излизам.	'I was on the point of going out.'
Ох, щях да припадна от страх!	'I was so frightened, I was almost going to faint.'

These forms are frequently used in conditional sentences and are synonymous to the conditional mood.'

#### Bulgarian English

Future in the Past	Future in the Past to be going to
--------------------	-----------------------------------

### 3.8. The Future Perfect Tense

#### *Бъдеще предварително време*

##### Formation:

The forms of the Future Perfect Tense are formed by the Future Tense of the Auxiliary verb *съм/бъда* 'to be' plus the Active Aorist Past Participle.

##### Positive Statements:

###### Singular

1р. аз ще съм (бъда) замънал/а/о	'I'll have left'
2р. ти ще си (бъдеш) замънал/а/о	'you'll have left'
3р. той ще е (бъде) замънал	'he'll have left'
тя ще е (бъде) замънала	'she'll have left'
то ще е (бъде) замънало	'it'll have left'

###### Plural

1р. ние ще сме (бъдем) замънали	'we'll have left'
2р. вие ще сте (бъдете) замънали	'you'll have left'
3р. те ще са (бъдат) замънали	'they'll have left'

##### Negative Statements:

###### Singular

1р. аз няма да съм (бъда) заспал/а/о	'I'll not have gone to sleep 'I won't have gone to sleep'
2р. ти няма да си (бъдеш) заспал/а/о	'you'll not have gone to sleep'
3р. той няма да е (бъде) заспал	'he'll not have gone to sleep'
тя няма да е (бъде) заспала	'she'll not have gone to sleep'
то няма да е (бъде) заспало	'it'll not have gone to sleep'

###### Plural

1р. ние няма да сме (бъдем) заспали	'we'll not have gone to sleep'
2р. вие няма да сте (бъдете) заспали	'you'll have not gone to sleep'
3р. те няма да са (бъдат) заспали	'they'll not have gone to sleep'

##### Word Order

The short forms of the personal pronouns and the reflexive particles *се*, *си* are placed between the Auxiliary verb *съм/бъда* and the Participle.

След една седмица ти ще си <i>се</i> подготвил добре за изпитите.	'In a week's time you'll have prepared well for the exams.'
---	---

Ще си получила телеграмата ми и ще си <i>ми</i> отговорила много преди това писмо да стигне до теб.	'You will have got my telegram and I will have received your answer long before this letter reaches you.'
---	---

Дотогава ще съм <i>се</i> запознал с всички колеги от отдела.	'I will have met all the staff at the department by then.'
---	--

Note the exception: In the third person singular they stand between *ще* and the forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм/бъда*:

Дали ще <i>го</i> е забравила дотогава?	'I wonder if she will have forgotten him by then.'
Няма ли да <i>се</i> е счупило?	'Won't it have broken?'

The Interrogative particle *ли* is placed after the Active Past Participle of the verb:

Ще си забравил <i>ли</i> ?	'Will you have forgotten?'
----------------------------	----------------------------

### Use:

The Future Perfect Tense indicates that the action it denotes precedes some point of the time in the future. The action usually both begins and ends before a definite moment of the time in the future.

Надявам се, че ще си научил	'I hope your Bulgarian will
добре български, когато	have improved when I come
дойда пак.	again.'
До края на тази година	'By the end of this year I
ще съм преподавал двадесет	will have been teaching for
години в това училище.	twenty years at this school.'
Обади ми се към осем часа.	'Call me at about eight
Дотогава ще съм превела	o'clock. I will have trans-
статията ти.	lated your paper by then.'
Когато си дойдеш пак след	'When you come back again in
две години, ще си завършил	two year's time you will have
образованието си.	graduated.'

Bulgarian	English
-----------	---------

Future Perfect Tense	Future Perfect Tense Future Perfect Continuous
-------------------------	--

### 3.9. The Future Perfect in the Past Tense

*Бъдеще предварително време в миналото*

#### Formation:

The Future Perfect in the Pst Tense is formed by the Future in the Past form of the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be' plus the Active Past Participle of the main verb.

#### Positive Statements:

##### Singular

1р. аз щях да съм (бъда) замйнал/а/о	'I would have left'
2р. ти щеше да си (бъдеш) замйнал/а/о	'you would have left'
3р. той щеше да е (бъде) замйнал	'he would have left'
тя щеше да е (бъде) замйнала	'she would have left'
то щеше да е (бъде) замйнало	'it would have left'

##### Plural

1р. ние щяхме да сме (бъдем) замйнали	'we would have left'
2р. вие щяхте да сте (бъдете) замйнали	'you would have left'
3р. те щяха да са (бъдат) замйнали	'they would have left'

#### Negative statements:

##### Singular

1р. аз нямаше да съм (бъда) заспал/а/о	'I wouldn't have gone to sleep'
2р. ти нямаше да си (бъдеш) заспал/а/о	'you wouldn't have gone to sleep'
3р. той нямаше да е (бъде) заспал	'he wouldn't have gone to sleep'
тя нямаше да е (бъде) заспала	'she wouldn't have gone to sleep'
то нямаше да е (бъде) заспало	'it wouldn't have gone to sleep'

##### Plural

1р. ние нямаше да сме (бъдем) заспали	'we wouldn't have gone to sleep'
2р. вие нямаше да сте (бъдете) заспали	'you wouldn't have gone to sleep'
3р. те нямаше да са (бъдат) заспали	'they wouldn't have gone to sleep'

#### Word Order:

The word order rules are the same as for the Future Perfect Tense - the short forms of the personal pronouns (*ме, те, го, я, ни, ви, ги; ми, ти, му, ѝ, ни, ви, им*) and the reflexive particles *се, си* are placed between the Auxiliary verb and the Participle, with the exception of the third person singular forms:

Ти щеше да си <i>се</i> подготвил	'You would have prepared well
добре за изпитите, ако не	for the exams if you had not
ѝ1 беше върнал книгата.	returned the book to her.'
Дотогава щях да съм <i>се</i> запо-	'I would have met all the col-
знал с всички колеги от	leagues from the department
отдела.	by then.'



### But:

Дали щеше да го е забрави-  
ла след толкова години?

'I wonder if she would have  
forgotten him after so many years.'

### Use:

The Future Perfect in the Past Tense (бъдеще предварително  
време) is used to denote actions or events completed before a certain  
point of time in the future, viewed from some moment in the past. The  
forms of the Future Perfect in the Past are not very frequent. They occur  
mainly in complex conditional sentences with modal meaning.

Той знаеше, че **щеше да е**  
**свършил** задачата си много  
преди полунощ.

'He knew he would have accom-  
plished the task long before  
midnight.'

Бях сигурен, че до пет часа  
**щях да съм отишъл и да съм**  
**върнал.**

'I was certain that I would  
have gone there and would have  
come back by 5 o'clock.'

**Щяхте да сте разговаряли**  
с него, ако му бяхте по-  
звънйли преди 4.30 часа.

'You would have managed to  
talk to him if you had given  
him a ring before 4.30.'

**Щеше ли да си се сетил да**  
пуснеш писмото, ако не  
бях ти напъмнила?

'Would you have remembered to  
post the letter if I had not  
reminded you about it?'

### Bulgarian

### English

Future Perfect  
in the Past Tense

Future Perfect  
in the Past

## 4. VOICE OF THE VERB

### СТРАДАТЕЛЕН ЗАЛОГ

Voice is closely related to the syntax of the sentence.

Bulgarian verbs have two voice forms: the Active Voice and the  
Passive Voice. The Subject of the Active construction quite often denotes  
the Agent (doer) of the action, while the Subject of a Passive construction  
has the meaning of the recipient of the action - that is a person or non-  
person affected by the action.

### Formation of the Passive Voice

Only transitive verbs have forms in the Passive voice.

Bulgarian passive constructions are formed in two ways:

a) By adding the reflexive pronoun *се* to transitive verbs (usually) in  
the third person singular and plural:

В неделя **се открива** про-  
летният панаир.

'The spring trade fair will be  
opened on Sunday.'

**Вижда ли се** морето от ва-  
шата стая?

'Can the sea be seen from your  
room?'

Картините **не се продаваха.**

'The pictures were not on sale.'

In Russian there is passive formed with the reflexive suffix -ся. But  
note that it is formed only with verbs of imperfective aspect while in  
Bulgarian it can be formed with verbs of both aspects:

### Russian

### Bulgarian

### English

Земля освещается  
Солнцем.

Земята се осветява  
от слънцето.

'The Earth is given  
light by the Sun.'

b) By the various tense forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм* 'to be',  
followed by a Past Passive Participle of a transitive verb:

Подът на залата **беше по-**  
**стлан** с пстри красиви  
персийски килими.

'The floor of the hall was  
covered with beautiful  
colourful Persian rugs.'

**Не бях поканена** на приема.

'I had not been invited to the  
reception.'

Дълго време той живя с  
мисълта, че животът му **е**  
**осигурен.**

'For a long time he had cher-  
ished the idea that his future  
had been well provided for.'

Цялата уредба **беше напра-**  
**вена** от някой даровит, но

'The interior decoration was  
the work of a gifted but poor

бѣден художник.	artist.'
Картините <i>бѣха подбрани</i>	'The pictures were picked up
от художествените изложби	at various art exhibitions
само през един сезон.	within a single season.'

The Passive Past participle is derived by adding the suffix *-и* to the Aorist Past stem of the verb:

написах	'I wrote'	написан, -а, -о, -и	'written'
държах	'I held'	държан, -а, -о, -и	'held'

Verbs with Aorist Past stem ending in *-ох, -их* (from the First and Second Conjugation) form the Passive Past Participle with the suffix *-ен*:

донесох	'I brought'	донесен, -а, -о, -и	'brought'
изчистих	'I cleaned'	изчистен, -а, -о, -и	'cleaned'

Some verbs of the First Conjugation with stems ending in *-на* or *-и* form the Passive Past Participle with the suffix *-т*:

вдигнах	'I lifted'	вдигнат, -а, -о, -и	'lifted'
бих	'I beat'	бит, бита, -о, -и	'beaten'

Passive Past Participles change in gender and number in the same way as adjectives. They take the gender and number of the grammatical Subject of the sentence.

Изпратен е сигнал.	'A signal has been sent.'
Изпратена е телеграма.	'A telegram has been sent.'
Изпратено е съобщение.	'A message has been sent.'
Изпратени са двама души.	'Two persons have been sent.'

In Russian this kind of passive is formed with the auxiliary verb *быть* in the past or future tense plus the short passive participle of perfective aspect verbs (also changing in gender and number):

Экзамен был сдан студентом.	'The exam was taken by the student.'
Экзамены будут сданы студентами.	'The exams will be taken by the students.'

Use:

Both types of passive constructions have forms for all the tenses. Their usage, however, is closely related to their meaning.

a) The passive constructions with the reflexive pronoun bring into perspective the duration of the action. They are more frequently used with the Present and the Imperfect Past tenses.

Селата <i>не сѣ виждат</i> отгук.	'The villages cannot be seen from here.'
-----------------------------------	--

Гласът му <i>се чува</i> ясно.	'His voice can be heard clearly.'
Такава вълна <i>се продаваше</i>	'Such wool was only on sale in
само в големите градове.	the large towns.'
Трябва да <i>се издържи и уста-</i>	'It must be established imme-
<i>нови</i> дали има съучастни-	diately whether there are any
ци.	accomplices.'

b) The passive constructions formed with the verb *съм* 'to be' and the Passive Past Participle bring into perspective the result of the action:

Тя <i>бѣше облѣчена</i> с жѣлта	'She was wearing a yellow
рѣкля без рѣкви.	sleeveless dress.'
Той <i>бѣше победѣн</i> без ни	'He was defeated without the
най-малка съпротива.	slightest resistance.'
Ако престѣпниците не прѣ-	'If criminals did not make
вѣха грѣшки, то и престѣп-	mistakes, their crimes would
лѣнията им никога <i>не бѣха</i>	never be discovered, would
<i>били разкрѣвани</i> , нали?	they?'

In certain cases some reflexive verbs are used as passives. These passive constructions usually denote prohibition or permission:

Тук не сѣ пѣши.	'No smoking here.'
Не сѣ приказва така.	'One shouldn't say such things.'
В сградата се влиза с	'One needs a permit to enter the
с прѣпуск.	building.'

The Passive Voice is used less frequently in Bulgarian than in English.

English passive sentences like 'The student was given the book' are more common than 'The book was given to the student.' In Bulgarian the first type of sentences don't exist. The only way to say that in Bulgarian is: Книгата бѣше дадена на студѣнта.

## 5. MOOD OF THE VERB

### НАКЛОНЕНИЕ НА ГЛАГОЛА

Mood is a grammatical category of the verb expressing modality. Central for its meaning is the attitude of the speaker towards the content of the message. In Bulgarian it is expressed morphologically by the form of the verbs.

The verbs in Bulgarian have four Moods:

1. Indicative Mood (Изяснително наклонение)



2. Imperative Mood (Повелително наклонение)

3. Conditional Mood (Условно наклонение)

4. Renarrated Mood (Преизказно наклонение)

In the Russian language the first three moods exist. The Renarrated mood is considered a Balkan feature of the Bulgarian language. Some bulgarian authors speak of Deductive Mood and consider renarration a *modus* (manner) of speaking.

### 5.1. The Indicative Mood

#### Изъявително наклонение

The Indicative Mood indicates that events are regarded as facts of reality. Morphologically, it is the most developed system including all the tense, aspect and voice forms.

Една жена, облечена скромно, го покани да влезе. Тя закачи сърчно палтото му на отрупаните закачалки и като му се усмихна сърдечно, отвори стъклената врата, зад която се чуваха шумни разговори, смехове и препирни.

'A quietly dressed woman admitted him. She deftly hang up his overcoat on the crowded hatstand, then smiled cordially and opened the glass door, behind which loud talk and discussions could be heard, marked by occasional noisy laughter.'

### 5.2. The Imperative Mood

#### Повелително наклонение

The Imperative Mood is a direct expression of the speaker's will. It represents actions as commands or requests.

#### Formation:

There are two ways of forming imperatives in Bulgarian: simple imperative forms and complex imperative forms.

#### A. Simple Imperative Forms

There are simple Imperative forms only for second person singular and plural. The plural forms may be used as polite address (in commands and requests) to a singular person.

The endings for the singular are: *-u* [i] after consonant stems and *-i* [j] after stems, ending in a vowel.

The endings for the plural are: *-ete* [ete] after consonant stems

and *-ime* [jte] after stems ending in a vowel.

#### Examples: Imperative Forms

##### Singular

##### Plural

чета	чети	четете	'read'
говоря	говори	говорете	'speak'
мия	мий	мийте	'wash'
стоя	стой	стойте	'stay, stand'
гледам	гледай	гледайте	'look'
обличам се	облечи се	облечете се	'dress yourself'

#### Exceptions:

да вляза	влез	влезте	'come in'
да изляза	излез	излезте	'go out'
да сляза	слез	слезте	'climb down, get down'
държам	дръж	дръжете	'hold, catch'
да дам	дай	дайте	'give'
ям	яж	яжте	'eat'
да видя	виж	вижете	'see, look'
да дойда	елай	елате	'come'
да отида	иди (отиди)	идете	'go'
съм/бъда	бъди	бъдете	'be'

The verbs *мога* 'can' and *трябва* 'must' have no Imperative forms.

#### Negative forms of the Imperative

Only verbs of Imperfective Aspect can form negative Imperative forms. There are three ways to form negative Imperatives:

a) The negative particle *не* is placed before the positive forms of the Imperative (of Imperfective Aspect verbs):

##### Singular

##### Plural

тръгвам	не тръгвай	не тръгвайте	'don't go'
купвам	не купвай	не купвайте	'don't buy'
влизам	не влижай	не влижайте	'don't enter'
говоря	не говори	не говорете	'don't talk'
ям	не яж	не яжте	'don't eat'

b) Negative Imperatives are also formed by means of the negative Auxiliary form *недей/недèйме* plus invariable forms of the main verb, which are identical to the third person singular form of the Aorist Past tense of Imperfective Aspect verbs. (This form is an old short infinitive form):

Singular	Plural
пиша            недей писа	недейте писа            'don't write'
чета            недей чете	недейте чете            'don't read'
вълнувам се    недей се вълнува	недейте се вълнува    'don't get excited'

c) Another way to form Negative Imperative is by means of the Auxiliary verb *недей/недейте* plus *да* plus the present tense forms of the main verb (of Imperfective aspect again).

Singular	Plural
излизам    недей да излизаш	недейте да излизате    'don't go out'
вървам    недей да върваш	недейте да вървате    'don't elieve'
повтарям    недей да повтаряш	недейте да повтаряте    'don't repeat'

#### Stress:

a) Verbs which form Imperatives with the ending *-и* [i] for the singular, get the stress on the *-и* [i]-syllable and the verbs, which form the Imperative with the ending *-и* [j] preserve the stress on the verbal stem:

да избера	<i>изберѝ</i>	'choose'
да поръчам	<i>поръчаѝ</i>	'order'

b) In the plural Imperative forms the verbs with the ending *-ете* [ete] have the stress on the prefinal syllable and in those ending in *-ите* [jite] the stress remains on the verbal stem:

изберете	'choose'
поръчайте	'order'

The forms of the imperative mood in Russian are quite similar:

пиши, пишите 'write', не пиши, не пишите 'don't write'  
читай, читайте 'read' не читай, не читайте 'don't read'

It is a rule in Russian, too, to form the negative of the imperative from imperfective verbs. However, in contrast to Bulgarian, there are exceptions to this rule in cases when the speaker considers the action not desirable:

Смотри, не упади!            'Be careful', don't fall down!'

### B. Complex Forms of the Imperative Mood

Complex Imperatives are formed from the particles *нека да*, *нека*, *да* and *хайде да* plus the present tense forms of the verbs:

#### Singular

1p. нека да мълча	'let me be silent'
2p. нека да мълчиш	'(you'd better) be silent'

3p. нека да мълчи            'let him/her be silent'

#### Plural

1p. нека да мълчим	'let us be silent'
2p. нека да мълчите	'you'd better be silent'
3p. нека да мълчат	'let them be silent'

#### Examples:

Нека кажа.	'Let me tell.'
Нека каже.	'Let him tell.'
Да повтарим.	'Let us repeat.'
Хайде да влезем.	'Let us go in.'

Negatives are formed by placing the particle *не* in front of the verb of Imperfective aspect:

Нека да не мълчим.	'Let us not be silent.'
Хайде да не повтаряме.	'Let us not repeat.'

In the negative forms the reflexive pronouns *се*, *си* stand between the negative particle *не* and the verb:

Нека да не <i>си</i> отиваме още.	'Let us not leave yet.'
Нека да не <i>се</i> смушават.	'They needn't be embarrassed.'

In Russian complex forms of the imperative are formed with *давай*, *давайте* plus the infinitive of the imperfective verbs (*Давайте играть в футбол!* 'Let us play football!') or plus the future of the perfective verbs (*Давай пойдём в кино!* 'Let's go to the cinema!') or when the permission/command refers to a third person - *пусть* plus present or future tense of the verb (*Пусть Катя откроет окно!* 'Let Kate open the window!')

#### Use:

Imperative sentences are often used without a Subject - the Subject is implied. This is the person (or persons) that the order or request is addressed to.

Спри радиото, ако обичаш.	'Turn off the radio, please.'
Не се навеждай навън!	'Don't lean out of the window.'
Не се обиждайте.	'Don't take offence.'

When used in positive imperative sentences some verbs of the Imperfective aspect may sound less polite than verbs of the Perfective aspect. They also convey urgency and repetition:

Слез на третата спърка.            'You should get off at the



Ведна̀га слѝзайте от  
колѝтата!

Ма̀хай се отту̀к!

Вѝнаги ми ка̀звайте ѝсти-  
ната.

third stop.'

'Get out of the car immedi-  
ately!'

'Get away from here!'

'You must always tell me the  
truth.'

The simple Imperative forms are only used in the second person  
singular and plural. The complex Imperative forms usually occur in the  
first and third person singular and plural.

Не сѐ приближа̀вай!

'Don't come nearer.'

Опѝтайте се да ми го обяс-  
ните.

'Try and explain it to me,  
please.'

Нѐка да се опѝтаме да за-  
бра̀вим за слѝчилото се.

'Let's try and forget what has  
happened.'

Нѐка да не сѐ отклоня̀вам.

'Let me not digress.'

Нѐка Пѐтя да ми се оба̀ди  
довечѐра.

'Tell Petya to give me a ring  
tonight.'

### 5.3. The Conditional Mood

#### Условно наклонение

##### Formation:

The Bulgarian Conditional Mood consists of the special Aorist  
forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм* plus the Active Aorist Past Participle,  
ending in *-л*.

##### Positive Forms:

###### Singular

1р. аз бих желѝл/а/о

'I would like'

2р. ти би желѝл/а/о

'you would like'

3р. той би желѝл

'he would like'

тя би желѝла

'she would like'

то би желѝло

'it would like'

###### Plural

1р. нѝе бѝхме желѝли

'we would like'

2р. виѝе бѝхте желѝли

'you would like'

3р. те бѝха желѝли

'they would like'

##### Negative forms:

###### Singular

1р. аз не бѝх се учѝдил/а/о

'I wouldn't be surprised'

2р. ти не бѝ се учѝдил/а/о

'you wouldn't be surprised'

3р. той не бѝ се учѝдил

'he wouldn't be surprised'

тя не бѝ се учѝдила

'she wouldn't be surprised'

то не бѝ се учѝдило

'it wouldn't be surprised'

###### Plural

1р. нѝе не бѝхме се учѝдили

'we wouldn't be surprised'

2р. виѝе не бѝхте се учѝдили

'you wouldn't be surprised'

3р. те не бѝха се учѝдили

'they wouldn't be surprised'

##### Word Order:

The forms of the Auxiliary verb are usually placed before the  
Participle:

*Бих си купи́ла* картината,  
ако́ се прода́ва.

'I'd like to buy the picture  
if it's for sale.'

The short forms of the personal pronouns *ме, те, го, я, ни, ви, ги; ми, ти, му, ѝ, ни, ви, им*, the reflexive pronouns *се, си* and the  
question-forming particle *ли* are placed between the forms of the Auxiliary  
verb and the Participle:

Те бѝха *ни се* разсе́рдили,  
ако́ не ги пока́ним.

'They'd be angry with us if we  
didn't invite them.'

Бѝхте *ли ми* простѝли?

'Could you forgive me?'

In Russian conditional mood is formed with the particle *бы*  
(which can be placed before or after the verb) and the past tense form of  
the verb:

Мы пошлѝ бы в театр, е́сли  
бы я достѝл билѝты.

'We would have gone to the  
theatre if I had got tickets.'

##### Use:

Conditional forms are frequently used in conditional sentences and  
express unreal or hypothetical actions, states or events, which may take  
place if certain conditions are satisfied. The action or state may be  
considered by the speaker as desired, necessary, possible, imaginary or  
non-factual. The two Clauses in a conditional sentence are logically  
connected in a causal relationship and the place of the *ако*-clause 'if-  
clause' may vary. The *ако*-clause may refer to future or to past actions

and the verbs which occur in the *ако*-clause are in the Present, the Imperfect Past and in the Past Perfect tenses.

In contrast to English, there are no tense distinctions in the non factual conditional clauses, which may refer to the future or to the past.

#### Examples:

Ако ймах време, довечера бих дошъл с вас. (future time reference)	'If I had time, I would come with you tonight.'
Ако ме бяхте поканили, бих дошъл. (= щях да дойда)	'If you had invited me, I would have come.'
Не бих се тревожил толкова, ако бях на ваше място.	'I wouldn't worry too much, if I were you.'
Ако можех да я видя, всичко би било наред.	'If only I could see her, everything would be all right.'
Ако зависеше от мен, не бих им разрешила да ползват телефона.	'If I had a say in the matter, I wouldn't allow them to use the phone.'

Conditional forms may be used in non-conditional sentences with modal meaning (similar to the Subjunctive Mood in English):

Бих искал лятото да дойде по-скоро.	'I wish summer would come sooner.'
Не бих се съгласила с вас.	'I wouldn't agree with you.'

Conditional forms are sometimes used to express polite requests, mild orders or wishes:

Бихте ли превели това изречение?	'Would you translate this sentence, please.'
Би ли ми услужила с речника си?	'May I have your dictionary for a while?'
Бихме предпочели да не идваме с вас.	'We would rather not join you.'
Би трябвало да сте се досетили досега.	'You should have guessed by now.'

In Russian these forms are used colloquially when advising or requesting more politely:

Лучше бы почитал книгу.	'You had better read a book.'
-------------------------	-------------------------------

## 5.4. The Renarrated Mood

### Преизказно наклонение

The Bulgarian language has special verb forms which mark morphologically the fact that the speaker has not personally witnessed the events he/she is telling about. Through the forms of the Renarrated Mood the speaker is distancing himself/herself from the events. The information related to the speaker's message is second-hand and the Renarrated forms often indicate that the speaker is uncertain and even doubts the truthfulness of the related events. (Other terms for this specific mood are - non-testimonial, indirect, etc.)

#### Formation:

The forms of the Renarrated Mood consist of the Present Tense forms of the Auxiliary verb *съм* plus the Active Aorist Past Participle or the Active Imperfect Past Participle.

All the forms of the Indicative Mood have counterparts in the Renarrated Mood. The most frequently used tenses in the Renarrated Mood are: the Aorist Past, the Imperfect Past and the Future tenses.

The Auxiliary verb forms in the third person singular and plural (*е*, *са*) are omitted in the Renarrated forms.

The Renarrated forms for the Present and the Imperfect past tenses are the same:

#### Indicative forms

##### Present Tense forms

Singular		Renarrated forms
1р. аз пиша	'write or	пишел/а съм
2р. ти пишеш	am/are/is	пишел/а си
3р. той пише	writing'	пишел
тя пише		пишела
то пише		пишело
Plural		
1р. ние пишем		пишели сме
2р. вие пишете		пишели сте
3р. те пишат		пишели

##### Imperfect Past tense forms

Singular		Renarrated forms
1р. пишех	'was/were	пишел/а съм



2р. пишеше	writing'	пйшел/а си
3р. пишеше		пйшел/а/о

Plural		
1р. пишехме	'were	пйшли сме
2р. пишехте	writing'	пйшли сте
3р. пишеха		пйшли

#### Aorist Past tense forms Renarrated forms

Singular		
1р. пйсах	'wrote'	пйсал/а съм
2р. пйса		пйсал/а си
3р. пйса		пйсал/а/о

Plural		
1р. пйсахме		пйсали сме
2р. пйсахте		пйсали сте
3р. пйсаха		пйсали

The renarrated forms for the Perfect and Past Perfect tenses are the same:

Perfect Tense forms Renarrated forms		
Singular		
1р. пйсал/а съм	'have/has	бил/а съм пйсал/а
2р. пйсал/а си	written'	бил/а си пйсал/а
3р. пйсал/а/о е		бил/а/о пйсал/а/о
Plural		
1р. пйсали сме	'have	били сме пйсали
2р. пйсали сте	written'	били сте пйсали
3р. пйсали са		били пйсали

Past Perfect Tense forms Renarrated forms		
Singular		
1р. бях пйсал/а	'had	бил/а съм пйсал/а
2р. беше пйсал/а	written'	бил/а си пйсал/а
3р. беше пйсал/а/о		бил/а/о пйсал/а/о
Plural		
1р. бяхме пйсали		били сме пйсали

2р. бяхте пйсали	били сте пйсали
3р. бяха пйсали	били пйсали

The Renarrated forms for the Future and the Future in the Past tenses are the same:

Future Tense forms Renarrated forms		
Singular		
1р. ще пйша	'will	щял/а съм да пйша
2р. ще пйшеш	write'	щял/а си да пйшеш
3р. ще пйше		щял/а/о да пйше
Plural		
1р. ще пйшем		щели сме да пйшем
2р. ще пйшете		щели сте да пйшете
3р. ще пйшат		щели да пйшат

#### Future in the Past Tense Renarrated forms

Singular		
1р. щях да пйша	'would	щял/а съм да пйша
2р. щеше да пйшеш	write'	щял/а си да пйшеш
3р. щеше да пйше		щял/а/о да пйше
Plural		
1р. щяхме да пйшем		щели сме да пйшем
2р. щяхте да пйшете		щели сте да пйшете
3р. щяха да пйшат		щели да пйшат

The Renarrated forms for the Future Perfect and the Future Perfect in the Past tenses are the same:

Indicative forms Renarrated forms		
Future Perfect Tense forms		
Singular		
1р. ще съм пйсал/а	'will	щял/а съм да съм пйсал/а
2р. ще си пйсал/а	have	щял/а си да си пйсал/а
3р. ще е пйсал/а/о	written'	щял/а/о да е пйсал/а/о
Plural		
1р. ще сме пйсали		щели сте да сте пйсали
2р. ще сте пйсали		щели сте да сте пйсали
3р. ще са пйсали		щели да са пйсали

## Future Perfect in the Past

- 1р. щях да съм писал/а  
2р. щеше да си писал/а  
3р. щеше да е писал/а/о

## Renarrated forms

### Singular

- 'would        щял/а съм да съм писал/  
have        щял/а си да си писал/а  
written'    щял/а/о да е писал/а/о

### Plural

- 1р. щяхме да сме писали        щели сме да сме писали  
2р. щяхте да сте писали        щели сте да сте писали  
3р. щяха да са писали        щели да са писали

The Negative of the renarrated present and past tenses is formed by placing the particle *не* before the Auxiliary verb *съм* and for the third person singular and plural - before the Participle:

- Разбра̀х, че сно̀щи не си се        'I hear you were not back on  
в̀ърнал наврѐме.                    time last night.'  
Той не отиш̀ъл наврѐме.        'He is said not to have gone  
   on time.'

The Negative of the renarrated future tenses is formed by substituting *нямa да* from the Indicative Future Tense with *нямало да* plus the main verb:

- Вя̀рно ли е, че нямало да        'Is it true that you are not  
заминаваш за чужбина?        going abroad?'

### Use:

While the Indicative Mood forms indicate that the speaker believes the information he/she relates to be factual and objective, the Renarrated Mood forms indicate that the speaker has not witnessed the event and may express various degrees of subjectivity towards the information.

### Indicative Mood

- Когато тя се объ̀рна, той        'When she turned he had al-  
си бѐше трѣгнал.                    ready left.'

### Renarrated Mood

- Когато тя се объ̀рнала, той        '(As I came to know) when she  
си бил трѣгнал.                    turned he had already left.'

### Examples:

- Чух, че писм̀ото приси́гнало        'I heard the letter had been  
с голя̀мо закъснѣние.            greatly delayed.'

Чух, че пак те боля̀л кра-  
кѣт.

Ако̀ зна̀ех, че това̀ про-  
клѣто̀ сѣло̀ билò то̀лко̀ва  
далѣче, нямаше да трѣгвам.  
Охо, че ти си говѣрела много  
добрѐ бѣлгарски!

Чух, че Бѣби се развѣждал.

Всички ка̀зват, че на нѣя  
не мо̀жело да се разчѣта.  
Чѣхте ли, че нямало да се  
открѣва излòжбата?  
- Как е бо̀лният? - Току̀-що  
сестра̀та ми ка̀за, че вѣче  
ста̀вал и се разхòждал.

Бил замѣнал уж, за да ги  
тѣрси.

Бил съм го излѣгал!

На това̀ мя̀сто, ка̀кто се  
дока̀зва от разко̀пките, се  
намѝрало ста̀ро тракийско  
сѣлище.

Тра̀ките притежа̀вали висò-  
ка матери́ална култу̀ра. Те  
умѐели да израбо̀тват пре-  
кра̀сни украшѣния.

The forms of the Renarrated Mood are the verb forms of fairy-tales and folk-stories as well as in historical texts about ancient times.

*Имало* едно̀ врѐме едно̀ мо-  
миче. То *се ка̀звало* Снежан-  
ка, защòто *билò* бѣло като  
сняг.

'I hear you have pains in your  
leg again.'

'If I had known the blasted  
village was so far I wouldn't  
have started.'

'Well, isn't this rather a  
pleasant surprise. Your Bulga-  
rian seems to be very fluent.'

'I heard that Bob was getting  
a divorce.'

'She is said to be quite  
unreliable.'

'Have you heard that the exhi-  
bition is not going to be opened?'

'How is the patient feeling?  
The nurse has just told me  
that he can already get out of  
bed and walk.'

'Reportedly, he had gone away  
to look for them (but I rather doubt it).'

'He claims I have cheated on  
him (but that's not true).'

'Excavations show that there  
had been an ancient Thracian  
settlement on this site.'

'The Thracians had highly  
developed material culture.  
They were skilled in manu-  
facturing exquisite jewelry  
and ornaments.'

'Once upon a time there was a  
girl. Her name was Snow-white,  
because she was as white as  
snow.'



Прабългарите **живеели**  
в Азия.

'The old Bulgarians lived  
in Aisa.

As can be seen in the examples, the Bulgarian renarrated mood can be translated into English with the help of some lexical means such as - 'people say', 'they say' 'I have been told that', etc., as well as with words or phrases expressing doubt in the truthfulness of the actions.

## 6. NON-FINITE VERB FORMS

### НЕЛИЧНИ ГЛАГОЛНИ ФОРМИ

The non-finite verb forms (or verbals) in Bulgarian are:

#### 1. The Participles:

a) the Active Present Participle (сегашно деятелно причастие),

b) the Active Imperfect Past Participle (минало несвършено деятелно причастие),

c) the Active Aorist Past Participle (минало свършено деятелно причастие),

d) the Passive Past Participle (минало страдателно причастие).

#### 2. The Verbal Adverb (деепричастие)

#### 3. The Verbal Noun (отглаголно съществително)

#### 4. The Infinitive (инфинитив)

The non-finite verb forms do not differ from the finite verb forms in their lexical meaning. However, in terms of syntactic function in the sentence, they behave either like verbs, or like nouns, adjectives, adverbs, etc. They have some verbal and some non-verbal features.

## 6.1. PARTICIPLES

### ПРИЧАСТИЯ

#### A. The Active Present Participle

##### Сегашно деятелно причастие

##### Formation:

The Active Present Participle is formed from the first person singular of the Present Tense forms of the verbs, by adding the suffixes -*ещ*, -*ящ*, -*ащ*. This Participle is derived only from verbs of the Imperfective Aspect.

The suffixes -*ящ*/-*ащ* (after *ž*, *č*, *š*) derive Participles from verbs of the first and second conjugation.

When the stress in the Present form is not on the final syllable the suffix is -*ещ*.

Verbs of the third conjugation form the Participles by adding the suffix -*щ*.

#### Present Tense forms

#### Active Present Participle

##### 1p. singular

четà	'read'	четящ	'reading'
блестя	'shine'	блестящ	'shining'
държа	'hold'	държащ	'holding'
живея	'live'	живеещ	'living'
говоря	'speak'	говорец	'speaking'
гледам	'watch'	гледащ	'watching'

The consonants [k] and [g] change into [č] and [ž].

тека	'flow'	течащ	'flowing'
мога	'be able'	можещ	'capable'

The corresponding participle in Russian is quite similar and also changes in gender and number:

	Russian	Bulgarian	English
masc.	читающий	четящ	'reading'
fem.	читающая	четяща	
neut.	читающее	четящо	
pl.	читающие	четящи	

But in Russian the Present Participles don't add definite articles.

##### Use:

The Active Present Participles usually function as Attributes in noun phrases. They behave like adjectives: they change in gender and number and take articles in the same way as adjectives. They agree in gender and number with the noun in front of which they stand:

По пода имаше хлебàрки и други пълзящи насеко̀ми.	'There were cockroaches and other crawling insects on the floor.'
Мълчащата жена изглеждаше нервна.	'The silent woman seemed to be nervous.'
Уплашихте ли се от лаещите кучета?	'Were you scared of the barking dogs?'

The Active Present Participles may be substantivized and may function as nouns:

*Участващите* да се приготвят 'The participants should get ready for the start.'

The Active Present Participles are sometimes used in particular phrases, which function in relative clauses:

Получихте ли информация 'Have you got information  
за всички влакове, *присти-* about all the trains arriving  
*гащи* след дванайсет часа? after 12.00?'

(The opposite will be *заминиващи*).

Хареса ли ти артиста, *из-* 'Did you like the actor  
*пълняващ* ролята на Хамлет? playing Hamlet?'

Уважавам хората, *говорящи* 'I respect people who speak  
няколко езика. several foreign languages.'

Some Active Present Participles also occur as constituents of compound nouns or collocations:

пишеща машина	'typewriter'
гърмяща змия	'rattlesnake'
миеща мечка	'raccoon, coon'
входяща информация	'input information'
смекчаващи (вината)	'mitigating circumstances'
обстоятелства	
лежащо положение	'recumbent position'
говорящ филм	'talking film (talkie)'
кървяща рана	'raw wound', etc.

## B. The Active Imperfect Past Participle

*Минало несвършено деятелно причастие*

### Formation:

The Active Imperfect Past Participles are derived from the first person singular of the Imperfective or Perfective verbs in the Past Imperfective Tense, by adding the suffix *-л*. They change in gender and number. The stress remains the same as in the Imperfect Past forms:

Imperfect Past Tense	Active Imperfect Past Participle
1p. singular	
четях	четял, -а, -о, -и 'read'

играех	играел, -а, -о, -и	'played'
живеех	живеел, -а, -о, -и	'lived'
лежах	лежал, -а, -о, -и	'lain'
вървях	вървял, -а, -о, -и	'walked'
търпях	търпял, -а, -о, -и	'endured'

In the Russian language there are no corresponding verb forms.

### Use:

The Active Imperfect Past Participles are not used independently or as attributes in a sentence. They are only constituents of the compound renarrated forms of the Present and Imperfect Past tenses:

Казват, че всяка сутрин	'They say he goes for a swim
<i>ходел</i> да плува.	every morning.'
Тя ми каза, че често <i>мис-</i>	'She told me she had often
<i>лела</i> за мен, но не <i>смела</i> да	thought about me but she
ми се обади.	hadn't dared to call me.'

## C. The Active Aorist Past Participle

*Минало свършено деятелно причастие*

### Formation:

Active Aorist Past Participles are derived from the first person singular form of the Aorist Past tense verbs, by adding the suffix *-л*. These verbs can be of either Perfective or Imperfective Aspect. They change in gender and number, and take articles in the same way as adjectives.

Aorist Past Tense	Active Aorist Past Participles
1p. singular	
усетих	усетил, -а, -о, -и 'felt'
написах	написал, -а, -о, -и 'written'
гледах	гледал, -а, -о, -и 'seen'
узрях	узрял, -а, -о, -и 'ripened'
взех	взел, -а, -о, -и 'taken'
чух	чул, -а, -о, -и 'heard'

Some sound changes occur when Participles are derived from verbs ending in *-ох*: The sound [а] is omitted in the feminine, neuter and plural participles:



Aorist forms	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plural
чѣтох	чел	чѣла	чѣло	чѣли 'read'
излязох	излязъл	излязла	излязло	излѣзли 'gone out'
рѣкох	рѣкъл	рѣкла	рѣкло	рѣкли 'said'

#### Irregular forms

бях	бил	била	билò	били 'been'
дойдох	дошъл	дошла	дошлò	дошли 'come'
отидох	отишъл	отишла	отишлò	отишли 'gone'
можах	могъл	могла	моглò	могли 'was/were'
	можал	можала	можало	можали 'able to'

In Russian the corresponding forms are not considered participles but Past tense of the verbs (прошедшее время):

читал, читала, читало, читали	'read'
был, была, было, были	'was, were'
пришёл, пришла, пришло, пришли	'came'

#### Use:

Active Aorist Past Participles are widely used in compound tense forms in the Indicative, Conditional and Renarrated moods.

#### Perfect Tense

Той не е <i>дошъл</i> още.	'He hasn't come yet.'
Нали не си <i>изгубила</i> билета?	'You haven't lost the ticket, have you?'
Мисля, че черешите са <i>узрели</i> .	'I believe the cherries are ripe.'

#### Past Perfect Tense

Не беше съвсем непознат - бях го <i>срещал</i> веднъж преди това.	'He wasn't exactly a stranger. I had met him once before.'
---	--

#### Future Perfect Tense

Надявам се, че ще си <i>научил</i> добре български, когато дойда пак.	'I hope your Bulgarian will have improved by the time I come again.'
---	--

#### Future Perfect in the Past

Нямаше да се е <i>счупило</i> , ако го бяхме взели в ръч-	'It wouldn't have broken, if we had carried it as hand
---	--

ния багаж. baggage.'

#### Conditional Mood

Бих <i>купила</i> картината, ако се продава.	'I'd like to buy the picture, if it's for sale.'
Бихте ли <i>превели</i> това изречение.	'Would you translate this sentence, please.'

#### Renarrated forms

Aorist Past Tense - ходил/а съм, ходил, -а, -о, -и	
Казват, че докато работел в Япония, <i>ходил</i> и в Китай.	'They say that while working in Japan he went to China, too.'

#### Perfect and Past Perfect Tenses:

бил съм ходил, -а, той бил ходил, тя била ходила, то билò ходило	
Future Perfect and Future Perfect in the Past tenses - щял/а съм да съм ходил/а, щял/а/о да е ходил/а/о	

When used attributively The Active Aorist Past Participle behaves as an adjective and agrees in gender and number with the noun, in front of which it stands:

<i>Падналата</i> мъгла беше причина за задръстването.	'The fallen fog had caused the traffic jam.'
Имаше ли ранени в <i>катастрофирания</i> влак?	'Were there any people injured in the train crash?'

Active Aorist Past Participles may be substantivized and used as nouns:

<i>Миналото</i> лесно се забравя.	'The past is easily forgotten.'
За <i>новодошлите</i> животът в големия град е твърде необичаен.	'Life in the big cities is rather strange for newcomers.'

The Active Aorist Past Participles are sometimes used in participial phrases which substitute relative clauses:

Студенти, <i>взели</i> книги от библиотеката, трябва да ги върнат преди края на семестра.	'Students who have borrowed books from the library must return them before the end of the semester.'
---	--

#### D. The Passive Past Participle

##### Минало страдателно причастие

The Passive Past Participles are derived from the Aorist Past Tense of the first person singular forms by means of the suffixes -н, -ен, -т.

They change in gender and number and take articles in the same way as adjectives.

Aorist Past tense	Passive Past Participle	
1p. singular	suffix <i>-и</i>	
ядѡсах	ядѡсан, -а, -о, -и	'angry/angered'
разказах	разказан, -а, -о, -и	'told'
написах	написан, -а, -о, -и	'written'
видях	видян, -а, -о, -и	'seen'
гледах	гледан, -а, -о, -и	'looked after'
държах	държан, -а, -о, -и	'held'
	suffix <i>-ен</i>	
чѣтох	чѣтен, -а, -о, -и	'read'
донѣсох	донѣсен, -а, -о, -и	'brought'
гѡтвих	гѡтвен, -а, -о, -и	'cooked'
	suffix <i>-т</i>	
вдигнах	вдигнат, -а, -о, -и	'lifted'
обрѣснах	обрѣснат, -а, -о, -и	'shaved/shaven'
познах	познат, -а, -о, -и	'known'
мих	мит, -а, -о, -и	'washed'
чух	чут, -а, -о, -и	'heard'
взѣх	взет, -а, -о, -и	'taken'
изпѣх	изпѣт, -а, -о, -и	'sung'
вѣрнах	вѣрнат, -а, -о, -и	'given back'
срѣцнах	срѣцнат, -а, -о, -и	'met'

There is a practical rule how to distinguish which verbs form the Participle with suffix *-т* - those that already have suffix *-на* in their Perfective Aspect form as in да срѣцна 'to meet', да вдигна 'to lift', and, of course, also the Perfective Aspect verbs, derived from them - да измия, да изпия, да зашия, да набия, and a group of short verbs as мия 'to wash', пия 'to drink', шия 'to sew', бия 'to beat'.

Some verbs have double forms of The Passive Past Participle. The forms ending in *-т* are more often used.

нагрѣх	нагрѣт, -а, -о, -и/нагрѣян, -а, -о, -и	'heated'
изпѣх	изпѣт, -а, -о, -и/изпѣян, -я, -о, -и	'sung'

Passive Past Participles are derived mainly from transitive verbs.

There are a few exceptions, such as:

усмѣхнах се	усмѣхнат, -а, -о, -и	'smiling'
-------------	----------------------	-----------

заглѣдах се      заглѣдан, -а, -о, -и      'with a gazing look'  
 Exceptions are Passive Past Participle formed from imperfective verbs:

По трѣвата е хѡдено.

Тук е влизано.

The Russian equivalents are formed similarly. The difference is that in Russian they are derived only from perfective aspect verbs while in Bulgarian they can be derived from both aspects.

	Russian	Bulgarian	English
mas.	прочитанный	прочѣтен	'read' (Past Part.)
fem.	прочитанная	прочѣтена	
neut.	прочитанное	прочѣтено	
pl.	прочитанные	прочѣтени	
mas.	взятый	взет	'taken'
fem.	взятая	взѣта	
neut.	взятое	взѣто	
pl.	взятые	взѣти	

Use:

Passive Past Participles are used in Passive Voice constructions. They combine the various tense forms of the Auxiliary verb *ѣм* 'to be' plus the Participle:

Двѣте му дѣщери бѣха <i>омѣ- жени</i> за офицѣри.	'His two daughters were married to army officers.'
Райѡнът е силно <i>охранѣван</i> .	'The area is heavily guarded.'
Той е бил жестоко <i>бит</i> и <i>из- тезѣван</i> по време на рѣз- пита.	'He had been severely beaten and tortured during the inter- rogation.'
Всѣчко във вѣлата билѡ <i>разбито</i> , но нѣмало нищо <i>откраднато</i> .	'Reportedly, the furniture in the villa had been smashed up but nothing had been stolen.'

Passive Past Participles are also used as attributes and agree in gender and number with the noun they modify. They usually denote some activity or result of an activity, prior to the action, denoted by the main verb in a sentence.

Седѣх, <i>заслѣшан</i> в концѣр- та със <i>затѡрени</i> очѣи.	'I sat listening to the concert with my eyes closed.'
--	---



**Предписаното** лечение с антибиотик не се оказа ефективно. 'The antibiotic medication prescribed was not effective (failed to achieve the desired effect).'

The Passive Past Participles may be substantivized and used as nouns:

На **ранените** трябва веднага да се окаже медицинска помощ. 'We must urgently provide medical attention to the injured.'

Passive Past Participles are sometimes used in participial phrases similar to relative clauses:

Нанесете удара с юмрук, **увит** с хавлиена кърпа. 'Hit it with your fist wrapped in a towel.'

Денят, **определен** за сватбата, приближаваше. 'The day set for the wedding was near.'

## 6.2. Verbal Adverbs

### Деенричастия

#### Formation:

Verbal Adverbs are derived from first person singular Present Tense forms by adding the suffixes: **-айки** (verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-ам**), **-ейки** (verbs of the first and second conjugation), **-яйки** (verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-ям**). Only verbs of the Imperfective aspect can form Verbal Adverbs.

Present tense form	Verbal Adverbs	
гледам	гледайки	'looking'
следвам	следвайки	'following'
четя	четейки	'reading'
мисля	мислейки	'thinking'
повтарям	повтаряйки	'repeating'
стрелям	стреляйки	'shooting'

The sounds [g] and [k] from the present forms are changed into [ž] and [č]:

мога	можейки	'being capable of'
тека	течейки	'flowing'

The verbal adverbs in Russian are unchangeable, too, and derived from imperfective aspect verbs:

Он **рисует**, **слушая** музыку. 'He is drawing (while)

listening to music.'

In Russian there is a verbal adverb from the perfective aspect (**Написа́в** писмо, я накле́ил ма́рку. 'After writing the letter I stuck the stamp'). In Bulgarian verbal adverbs from perfective aspect are never formed.

#### Use:

The activity denoted by the verbal adverb is simultaneous to that denoted by the main verb (in whatever tense form it occurs in a sentence):

Колата излезе от платното, **избягвайки** катастрофата. 'The car swerved off the road avoiding the accident.'

Verbal Adverbs are not typical of the spoken everyday, colloquial language. They are used in written or formal discourse.

Първо, **ползвайки** нож, свалете пластмасовата обвивка... 'First, using a knife, peel off the plastic cover...'

In the Negative forms the particle **не** is written separately and placed before the Verbal Adverb.

Продължихме пътуването си, **не знаейки и не подозирайки** никаква опасност. 'We continued our trip unaware and unsuspecting of any danger.'

## 6.3. Verbal Nouns

### Отглаголни съществителни

#### Formation:

There are two kinds of verbal nouns in Bulgarian. They are derived by adding the suffix **-не** or the suffix **-ние** to the first person singular past tense forms of the verbs.

a) The suffix **-не** derives verbal nouns from verbs of the Imperfective Aspect:

Past tense forms	Verbal Nouns ending in <b>-не</b>	
писах	писане	'writing'
бръснах	бръснене	'shaving'
ходих	ходене	'going'
мислих	мислене	'thinking'
вървях	вървене	'walking'
четя	четене	'reading'

b) The suffix **-ние** derives verbal nouns from verbs of both aspects

but perfective verbal nouns are more frequently derived with the suffix *-ние*.

Past tense forms	Verbal Nouns with suffix <i>-ние</i>	
предложих	предложение	'suggestion'
отмъстих	отмщение	'revenge'
закъснях	закъснение	'delay'
наказах	наказание	'punishment'
внимавах	внимание	'attention'

In Russian only the second type verbal nouns are formed.

Examples:		
предложить	предложение	'1. suggestion 2. sentence'
отомстить	отмщение	'revenge'
опоздать	опоздание	'delay'
наказать	наказание	'punishment'
	внимание	'attention'

Some verbs in Bulgarian have pairs of verbal nouns derived with both the suffixes *-не* and *-ние*. They usually differ in meaning but may sometimes be synonymous:

събиране	'addition, gathering'
събрание	'meeting'
падане	'drop, downfall'
падение	'degradation, disgrace'
вийждане	'standpoint, opinion'
видение	'apparition, vision'

<b>But:</b> увеличаване	
увеличение	'increase, growth'
намаляване	
намаление	'decrease, reduction'
разпределяне	
разпределение	'distribution, allocation'

Use:

Verbal Nouns express the result of an action and the result may sometimes be material. Verbal nouns with the suffix *-не* are semantically closer to verbs, while verbal nouns with the suffix *-ние* are semantically closer to nouns.

In the sentence both kinds behave like nouns - they form plurals

and take the article. Verbal Nouns are of the neuter gender and form the plural with the ending *-(и)я*.

*Обучението* на децата започва със *събиране* и *изваждане*.  
'Children start their education by studying addition and subtraction.'

*Предложенията* бяха обсъдени от двете правителства.  
'The proposals were discussed by the two governments.'

Ежедневната разговорна реч е изпълнена с много *повторения* и *паузи*.  
'Casual everyday conversation tends to be filled with repetition and pauses.'

Verbal nouns occur more frequently in journalistic and scientific texts.

*Обновлението* обхваща всички сфери на обществото.  
'The renovation includes all the spheres of society.'

Всеки трябва да намира *удовлетворение* в работата си.  
'Everyone must find satisfaction in his work.'

*Премахването* на държавния монопол ще доведе до *подобряване* на икономическите условия.  
'The elimination of the state's monopoly will result in the improvement of economic conditions.'

#### 6.4. The Infinitive

##### *Инфинитив*

Only some traces of the old Infinitive have remained in the Bulgarian language. It is used in Negative Imperative forms after the Auxiliary verb *недей/недейте* but it is often replaced by *да* constructions:

недей *закусва* = недей да *закусваш* 'don't have breakfast'

недей *пиша* = недей да *пишеш* 'don't write'

In Russian the infinitives end in *-ть*, *-чь* and *-ти* (писать 'to write', *закусить* 'to have breakfast', *мочь* 'to be able to, помочь 'to help), *нести* 'to carry' *расти* 'to grow'). The infinitive, as in English, is the dictionary form of verbs. It is conjugated and has a number of uses in the language.



## 7. VERB FORMATION

Verbs are derived from other verbs or from nouns, adjectives, adverbs, numerals, etc. by means of suffixes and prefixes.

When added to the verbs, the suffixes and/or prefixes may change the meaning or the aspect of the verb or both.

There are a number of primary verbs in Bulgarian, which may be either of the Perfective or of the Imperfective Aspect.

### Some primary verbs of the Perfective aspect

да дам	'to give'	да решà	'to decide'
да видя	'to see'	да сипя	'to pour'
да кажа	'to say'	да скòча	'to jump'
да глобя	'to fine'	да спася	'to save'
да кùпя	'to buy'	да хвърля	'to throw'

In Russian the corresponding verbs are quite similar but not always the aspect is the same:

дать 'to give' (also perfective), видеть 'to see' (but imperfective aspect), сказать (perfective) 'to say', купить (perf.) 'to buy', решить (imperf.) 'to decide'.

### Some primary verbs of the Imperfective aspect

губя	'to lose'	шйя	'to sew'
крйя	'to hide'	бйя	'to beat'
мия	'to wash'	дъвча	'to chew'
спя	'to sleep'	вòдя	'to lead'
плача	'to cry'	сèя	'to sow, plant'

In Russian:

губить 'to lose', скрывать 'to hide', мыть 'to wash', спать 'to sleep', плакать 'to cry'.

### 7.1. Derivation of Verbs of the Perfective Aspect

A. The suffix **-н-** is used to derive Perfective verbs from Imperfective ones. The verbs acquire additional semantic features and refer to single, unrepeatable, diminutive action or to the beginning of the activity, denoted by the originally imperfective verb:

Imperfective	Perfective
свйря 'to play music;	да свйрна 'to give a whistle' to whistle'
рèжа 'to cut'	да рèзна 'to make a cut'

чùкам	'to knock'	да чùкна	'to give a knock'
обйчам	'to love'	да обйчна	'to fall in love'
летя	'to fly'	да лйтна	'to fly off/start flying'
пия	'to drink'	да пййна	'to take a drink/sip'
дрёма	'to doze'	да дрёмна	'to take a nap'

In Russian this suffix is also used to form perfective aspect verbs: свистеть 'to whistle', свистнуть 'to give a whistle'.

B. Most often verbs of the Perfective aspect are derived from Imperfective verbs by means of prefixes. This is a very productive pattern of verb derivation in Bulgarian.

Some prefixes completely change the lexical meaning of the verb:

Imperfective	Perfective
	да <b>пре</b> пиша 'to copy'
	да <b>под</b> пиша 'to sign'
пиша 'to write'	да <b>пред</b> пиша 'to prescribe'
	да <b>над</b> пиша 'to inscribe '/address (an envelope)'
	да <b>о</b> пиша 'to describe'
	да <b>из</b> пиша 'to cover with writing'

In Russian prefixes are also widely used to change the lexical meaning as well as the aspect of verbs: писать 'to write', переписать 'to copy', подписаться 'to sign (oneself)', предписать 'to prescribe', описать 'to describe'.

Some prefixes modify the meaning of the verb with additional connotations:

Imperfective	Perfective
чакам 'to wait'	да <b>поч</b> акам 'to wait a little'
четà 'to read'	да <b>до</b> четà 'to finish reading'

There are about 18 prefixes which with a few exceptions are quite productive in the formation of verbs.

1. The prefix **в(ъ)-** may signify that the verbal action is directed inwards or it may mean transition into a new state.

да <b>въ</b> ведà	'to introduce'
да <b>въ</b> градя	'to build in'
да <b>въ</b> течня	'to turn into liquid'
да се <b>въ</b> каменя	'to petrify, turn into stone'
да (се) <b>въ</b> лошà	'to worsen'

Болките му се *влошиха*. 'His pains worsened.'

In Russian the same prefix is used but not always the aspect coincides with the Bulgarian: *входить* 'to come in', but imperfective aspect, *внести* 'to take in, to import'

2. The prefix *въз-* may signify that the verbal action is directed upwards, reversed or that it is renewed.

да <i>въз</i> дигна	'to raise, exalt to the skies'
да <i>въз</i> ляза	'to amount to'
да (се) <i>въз</i> държå	'to restrain, hold back'
да (се) <i>въз</i> противя	'to be opposed, object to'
да <i>въз</i> обновя	'to renew, revive'
Трудно бих се <i>въз</i> държåл	'It would be hard to restrain myself from laughing out.'
да не сè разсмèя.	

In Russian this prefix is *воз-* or *вос-*:  
*возбудить* 'to excite, to cause', *воскресить* 'to resurrect'.

3. The prefix *до-* may signify that the action has been brought to a certain limit, it may signify transition into a new state or inception of desire to do something.

да <i>до</i> несå	'to bring'
да <i>до</i> четå	'to finish reading'
да <i>до</i> ям	'to finish eating'
да <i>до</i> върша	'to finish something off'
да <i>до</i> платя	'to pay an additional sum'
да <i>до</i> бåвя	'to add'
да ми се <i>до</i> спя	'to start feeling sleepy'
Трябвa да <i>до</i> платите за попра̀вките.	'Additional payment is required for the repairs.'

In Russian:  
*доплыть* 'to swim to a certain point', *доплатить* 'to pay an additional sum'.

4. The prefix *за-* may signify the beginning of an action or state, transition into a different state, exchange and some other shades of meaning.

да <i>за</i> пèя	'to start singing'
да се <i>за</i> мисля	'to become thoughtful'
да <i>за</i> спя	'to fall asleep'

да *за*меня  
Продавачката откåза да *за*мени пулòвера.  
'to exchange'  
'The salesgirl refused to exchange the sweater.'

In Russian:  
*зала̀дить* 'to begin repeating the same words', *заду̀маться* 'to become thoughtful'.

5. The prefix *из-* may signify outward or upward motion, the completion of an action or a complete change of state.

да <i>из</i> ляза	'to go out'
да <i>из</i> несå	'to take/carry something out'
да се <i>из</i> качå	'to climb, go upstairs'
да <i>из</i> пия	'to drink something off'
да <i>из</i> горя	'to burn out/away'
Оста̀вихме òгъня да <i>из</i> горя.	'We let the fire burn out.'

In Russian this prefix is *из-* or *ис-*:  
*извинить* 'to excuse', *испить* 'to drink something off'.

6. The prefix *на-* may signify accumulation or denote that the object is affected by the action; it may signify satisfaction with the duration of the activity or the result of some gradual development.

да <i>на</i> трупам	'to pile up, heap up'
да <i>на</i> чупя	'to break into pieces'
да (се) <i>на</i> ведå	'to bent down'
да се <i>на</i> спя	'to get enough sleep'
да се <i>на</i> ра̀двам	'to be overjoyed'
да <i>на</i> пълнèя	'to put on weight'
да (се) <i>на</i> пия	'to get enough of drinking, to get drunk'

Не мòжеха да се *на*ра̀дват, че се е в̀рнал.  
'They were overjoyed to see him back.'

In Russian:  
*на̀резать* 'to cut into pieces', *на̀питься* 'to get enough of drinking, to get drunk'.

7. The prefix *над-* may signify that the action is on or over something or that it surpasses or exceeds something.

да <i>над</i> пиша	'to inscribe, write an address on an envelope'
да <i>над</i> вися	'to overhang, impend'



да <i>надпревара</i>	'to overtake, outdistance'
да <i>надпия</i>	'to drink more than someone'
да <i>надценя</i>	'to overestimate'
Боя се да не <i>надценя</i>	'I'm afraid of overestimating their
чувството им за хумор.	sense of humour.'

In Russian:

надписа́ть 'to inscribe, to write an address', надба́вить 'to add, to give additionally'

8. The prefix *о-(об-)* may signify that the activity encircles a large part of an object or that some covering is removed from an object.

да <i>оградя</i>	'to enclose, surround'
да <i>обвяя</i>	'to wrap up, entwine, envelop'
да <i>обшйя</i>	'to trim or border (a handkerchief)
да <i>обръсна</i>	'to shave off'
да <i>обеля</i>	'to peel off'
да <i>оголя</i>	'to strip naked, denude'
Лицето ми изгоря и но-	'My face was sunburnt and the skin
сът ми <i>се обели</i> .	of my nose has peeled off.'

In Russian:

обвенча́ть 'to wed, lit. to cover with a wreath', обволоче́ 'to wrap up, to cover (with clouds)'.

9. The prefix *от-* may signify movement away from something or action in response or in opposition to something.

да <i>откъсна</i>	'to tear off, pick'
да <i>отдалеча</i>	'to alienate, remove'
да <i>отделя</i>	'to separate, single out'
да <i>отговоря</i>	'to answer, respond'
да <i>отблъсна</i>	'to drive back, repulse'
Можете ли да ми <i>отде-</i>	'Could you spare me some minutes,
<i>лите</i> няколко минути?	please.'

In Russian:

отдали́ть 'to alienate, to remove', отве́тить 'to answer, respond'.

10. The prefix *по-* may signify that the action is done over some surface, or that the action is done over a short period of time.

да <i>покрѝя</i>	'to cover, encase in'
да <i>позлата</i>	'to gild, cover with gold'
да <i>постѝла</i>	'to cover (with a carpet, bedsheets,

да <i>почета</i>	tablecloth, flowers, etc.)'
да <i>попея</i>	'to read for a while'
Слънцето <i>позлати</i> пла-	'to sing for a while'
нинските върхове.	'The mountain tops were gilded by
	the sun.'

In Russian:

покры́ть 'to cover', позолоти́ть 'to gild, cover with gold'.

11. The prefix *под-* may signify an activity under something or limited action.

да <i>подпиша</i>	'to sign (under something)'
да <i>подчиня</i>	'to subordinate, overpower'
да <i>подценя</i>	'to underestimate'
да <i>подсладя</i>	'to sweeten'
да <i>подхвърля</i>	'to toss, hint'
Те с готовност <i>подчи-</i>	'They willingly subordinated their
<i>ниха</i> интересите си на	interests to the objectives of the
цѝлите на корпорацията.	corporation.'

In Russian:

подписа́ться 'to sign (under something)', подчини́ть 'to subordinate, overpower'.

12. The prefix *пре-* may signify passage through space, time or across some boundary or repetition of the action.

да <i>премина</i>	'to pass/cross over'
да <i>преживѝя</i>	'to survive, experience'
да <i>прескоча</i>	'to jump over, leap across'
да (се) <i>преуморя</i>	'to overstrain/overwork oneself'
да <i>прерисѝвам</i>	'to copy a painting, paint sth.
	again'

да <i>преразгледам</i>	'to re-examine, reconsider'
да <i>пресека</i>	'to cross'
да <i>престѝпя</i>	'to step over, to go beyond what is
	allowed'

Трябва да *се прераз-*  
*гледам* цѝлите на об-  
разова̀нието.  
'We should re-examine the purposes  
of the education.'

In Russian:

пресе́чь 'to cross, to cease', преступи́ть 'to step over, to go beyond what

is allowed'.

13. The prefix *пред-* may signify location before something in space and time.

да <i>предпа́зя</i>	'to protect, prevent'
да <i>предви́дя</i>	'to foresee, provide for, stipulate'
да <i>предполо́жа</i>	'to suppose, presume'
Мога́т ли да се <i>предви́-</i> <i>дят</i> вси́чки веро́ятности?	'Can all the possibilities be provided for?'

In Russian:

предохранить 'to protect, prevent', предвидеть 'to foresee', but imperfective aspect, предположить 'to suppose, presume'.

14. The prefix *при-* may signify approach, additional activity or the beginning of some state.

да <i>приближа́</i>	'to approach'
да <i>привлека́</i>	'to attract'
да <i>приба́вя</i>	'to add'
да ми се <i>приспи́</i>	'to start feeling sleepy'
да ми <i>прилоше́е</i>	'to start feeling unwell, feel faint'
Чувства́м, че́ ще ми <i>при-</i> <i>лоше́е</i> от гла́д.	'I'm beginning to feel faint with hunger.'

In Russian:

приблизить 'to approach', привлечь 'to attract', прибавить 'to add'.

15. The prefix *про-* may signify passage through something or the beginning of some action or state.

да <i>пробия́</i>	'to pierce through'
да <i>прозра́</i>	'to see through; understand'
да <i>пропу́сна</i>	'to let through; miss'
да <i>проговора́</i>	'to utter, begin to speak; recover one's speech'
да <i>прогле́дам</i>	'to begin to see; recover one's sight'
да <i>провървя́</i>	'to begin to walk; learn how to walk'
Сигуре́н съм, че нико́й няма да <i>прозре́</i> каквò	'I'm certain nobody will manage to see through my schemes.'

кроя́.

In Russian:

пробить 'to pierce through', прозреть 'to see through, understand', пропустить 'to let through, miss', проговорить 'to utter, begin to speak; to speak for long time'.

16. The prefix *раз-* may signify scattering something in various directions, bringing an activity to its end, reversing or undoing something.

да <i>разпрѣ́сна</i>	'to disperse, scatter'
да <i>разбѣ́я</i>	'to shatter into pieces'
да <i>разхвър́ля</i>	'to scatter, fling about, mess up'
да се <i>разхуба́вя</i>	'to grow prettier'
да <i>разцѣ́фна</i>	'to blossom, flourish'
да <i>разва́ля</i>	'to spoil, contaminate, damage'
да <i>разплета́</i>	'to unknit, disentangle'
да <i>размряза́</i>	'to unfreeze, thaw out'
Не очаква́х, че́ ще <i>раз-</i> <i>хвър́ли</i> ця́лата кѹ́хня, са́мо за да пригòтви едно̀ прòсто я́дене.	'I didn't expect he would mess up the whole kitchen while cooking just a simple meal.'

In Russian this prefix may be *раз-* or *рас-*:

распространить 'to widen, disperse, tell (a lie) to everybody', разбить 'to shatter into pieces', разбросить 'to mess up, to scatter, fling about'.

17. The prefix *с(ъ)-* may signify the activity of joining things together or action from the top downwards.

да <i>събера́</i>	'to collect, gather'
да <i>свържа́</i>	'to connect, join together; make ends meet'
да се <i>сприя́теля</i>	'to make friends, befriend someone'
да <i>скòча</i>	'to jump, leap'
да <i>сваля́</i>	'to take down, take something off'
Дъщеря́ ми лѣсно́ <i>се сприя́-</i> <i>тели́</i> с ня́колко де́ца на нейната́ вѣзра́ст.	'My daughter easily made friends with several children of her own age.'

In Russian:

сберечь 'to keep, prevent, save', связать 'to connect, join together', сдружиться 'to make friends with'.

18. The prefix *у-* may signify the completion of some activity.



да уморя	'to tire someone out'
да убия	'to kill'
да ушия	'to finish making, sewing (a dress, suit, etc.)'
да уловя	'to catch'
да уголемя	'to enlarge, extend'
Ще ги накажат, ако ги <i>уловят</i> да пуснат в общежитие-то.	'They'll be punished if they are caught smoking in the hostel.'

In Russian:

утомить 'to tire someone out', убить 'to kill', ушить 'to shorten or to take in (a dress, suit, etc.) by sewing'.

## 7.2. Derivation of Imperfective Verbs

### Образуване на глаголи от несвършен вид

Imperfective Aspect verbs are derived from Perfective Aspect verbs through suffixation. The suffixes do not change the general meaning of the verb, only its aspectual meaning - thus forming pairs of verbs equal in lexical meaning and differing in grammatical meaning - in aspect. Verbs of the Imperfective Aspect denote repetitive or unfinished action. The most frequent suffixes are: *-ам, -ям, -вам, -явам, -авам*.

a) The suffix *-ам*:

Some sound changes occur during the process of derivation:

Perfective Aspect	Imperfective Aspect	Sound Changes
да спра	спирам 0 (no vowel) - [i]	'to stop'
да умра	умирам	'to die'
да прочета	прочитам [e] - [i]	'to read'
да намеря	намирам	'to find'
да съблека	събличам [k] - [č]	'to undress'
да отложа	отлагам [o] - [a] [ž] - [g]	'to put off'
да преведа	превеждам [d] - [žd]	'translate'
да видя	виждам	'to see'
да изпра́тя	изпращам [t] - [št]	'to send'
да платя	плащам	'to pay'
да седна	сядам [e] - [ja]	'to sit'
да вля́за	влизам [ja] - [i]	'to enter'
да изля́за	излизам	'to go out'

да слъ́за                      сли́зам                      'to get off (atram); climb down'

b) The suffix *-ям*:

да изнеса	изна́сям [e] - [a]	'to export'
да отговоря	отговя́рям [o] - [a]	'to answer'
да повто́ря	повта́рям	'to repeat'
да отво́ря	отва́рям	'to open'
да затво́ря	затва́рям	'to close'

c) The suffix *-вам*:

да тръ́гна	тръ́гвам	'to start'
да изм́ия	изм́ивам	'to wash'
да напи́ша	напи́свам [š] - [s]	'to write'
да ка́жа	ка́звам [ž] - [z]	'to say/tell'
да нака́жа	нака́звам	'to punish'
да запла́ча	запла́квам [č] - [k]	'to start crying'

d) The suffix *-явам*:

да изпе́я	изпя́вам	'to sing'
да пребро́я	пребро́явам	'to count'
да проследя́	проследя́вам	'to follow'

e) The suffix *-авам*:

да реша́	реша́вам	'to decide, solve'
да полу́ча	полу́чавам	'to receive'
да победя́	побежда́вам [d] - [žd]	'to win'
да награ́дя	награжда́вам	'to award'

## 7.3. Derivation of Verbs from other Grammatical Categories

Verbs are also derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, interjections, etc. by means of various suffixes and prefixes.

a) Some verbs derived from nouns:

Noun	Verb
гост 'guest, visitor'	да гостя́/нагостя́ 'to treat someone to something'
игра́ 'game'	игра́я 'to play'
кал 'mud'	ка́ляя 'to cover with mud; sling mud at someone'
стрелà 'arrow'	стреля́я 'to shoot'

бесѣда	'discussion'	бесѣдвам	'to discuss, interview'
закон	'law'	узаконявам	'to legalize'
кураж	'courage'	окуражавам	'to encourage'
патент	'licence, patent'	патентовам	'to patent'
глад	'hunger'	гладувам	'to starve'
път	'road'	пътувам	'to travel'
пиянство	'drunkenness'	пиянствам	'to drink hard'
чувство	'feeling'	чувствам	'to feel'
любопитство	'curiosity'	любопитствам	'to pry, be inquisitive'
грим	'make up'	гримирам	'to apply make up'
идеал	'ideal'	идеализирам	'to idealize'
терор	'terror'	тероризирам	'to terrorize'
ръжда	'rust'	ръждавам	'to rust'
сапун	'soap'	сапунисвам (се)	'to soap (oneself)'

b) Some verbs derived from adjectives:

Adjective		Verb	
велик	'great'	'велича́я	'to glorify'
бесен	'furious'	бесне́я	'to go mad, fly into a passion'
дебел	'fat'	дебелѐя	'to get fat, put on weight'
стар	'old'	старѐя	'to grow old'
топъл	'warm'	топля́	'to heat, keep warm'
нервен	'nervous'	нервнича́	'to be restless, jittery'
важен	'important'	важнича́	'to put on airs'
хитър	'artful, clever'	хитру́вам	'to dodge, use cunning'

c) Some verbs derived from other categories:

Pronouns		Verb	
свой	'one's own'	усвоя́вам	'to learn/master'
себе си	'oneself'	обсе́бвам	'to take possession of, appropriate'
Numerals		Verb	
втори	'second'	повта́рям	'to repeat, do sth. for the second time'

Adverbs		Verb	
близо	'near'	доближа́вам	'to approach, near'
го			
иначе	'otherwise'	преинача́вам	'to distort'
Interjections		Verb	
мър-мър	мърмòря		'to murmur, grumble'
бър-бър	бърбòря		'to chatter, prattle'
ох	òхна		'to moan, to groan (once)'
чук	чу́кна		'to knock's'

## VI. ADVERBS

### Наречия

The Adverbs in Bulgarian are morphologically invariable words. In the sentence they often function as adverbial complements and may qualify verbs, nouns, adjectives or other adverbs.

Кàрайте <i>ба́вно</i> .	'Drive slowly.'
Баща́ му е <i>те́жко</i> бо́лен.	'His father is seriously ill.'
Настанѐте се в стàята <i>от-дàсно</i> .	'Check into the room on the right.'

### Classification:

In terms of their origin and structure adverbs may be classified

into:

#### A) simple

вън	'outside'	там	'there'
въ́тре	'inside'	до́лу	'down'

#### b) compound

##### 1. Derived from a simple adverb plus a preposition:

навъ́н	'outwards, outside'	натàм	'that way'
навъ́тре	'inwards'	надòлу	'downwards'

##### 2. Derived from a preposition plus a noun:

насре́ща	'against'
вкъ́щи	'at home'
довече́ра	'tonight'

##### 3. Formed in some other way:

го̀ре-до̀лу	'more or less. so-so' (lit. 'up-down')
ле́ка-поле́ка	'gradually, little by little'



a) adverbs of place

b) adverbs of time

c) adverbs of manner

d) adverbs of measure and degree

e) adverbs of reason and purpose

f) adverbs of comment (modal)

**Derivation:**

Спòрихме *приятелски*. 'We had a friendly argument.'

**Degrees of comparison:**

Adverbs of quality form degrees of comparison in the same way as adjectives (by adding the particles *nò-* for the comparative degree and *naù-* for the superlative degree in front of the respective adverb).

**Examples:**

добре 'well'	по-добре 'better'	най-добре 'best'
тихо 'quietly'	по-тихо 'more quietly'	най-тихо 'most quietly'

кѣсно 'late'	пò-кѣсно	'later'	на̀й-кѣсно 'latest'
Той се събуди <i>пò-кѣсно</i> ,		'He woke up later than he	
откòлкото възнамеряваше.		intended.'	
Съжалявам, че не бях се		'I was sorry I hadn't thought	
сѣтил за това <i>пò-рано</i> .		of it earlier.'	
<i>На̀й-чѣсто</i> си мислех за		'Most often I thought about	
това, ко̀ето се сл̀учи в		what had happened in the	
ресторанта.		restaurant.'	

**Syntactic functions:**

a) Adverbs may function as adverbial modifiers to finite and non-finite verb forms (semantically they may refer to manner, place, time, degree, purpose, cause, etc.).

Той завѣ <i>наляво</i> и <i>бавно</i>	'He turned left and went on
продължи <i>надолу</i> по улица-	strolling slowly down the
та.	street.'
Ще можете да пътувате	'You'll have the opportunity
<i>бързо</i> и <i>евтино</i> .	to travel quickly and cheaply.'
Пожарът бушуваше <i>ожесто-</i>	'The fire was blazing
<i>чено</i> .	fiercely.'

b) Adverbs may function as adverbial modifiers to an adjective or to another adverb. Usually the modifying adverb is an intensifier.

Гледката беше <i>невероятно</i> красива.	'The scenery was unbelievably beautiful.'
Говорите <i>прекалено</i> много.	'You talk too much.'
Те останаха <i>безкомпромисно</i> верни на принципите си.	'They remained uncompromisingly loyal to their principles.'

c) Some adverbs may function as attributes modifying nouns:  
Веселбите им продължиха 'Their revelries continued for

дни *наред*. days on end.  
 Всѣки ден го вѣждам в кѣ- 'I see him every day at the  
 ното *настрѣща*. opposite cinema.'

The position of the adverbs in Bulgarian is more mobile than in English but adverbs are rarely placed between an auxiliary verb and a participle.

*Нѣкога* не сѣм хѣдил в Пловдив. 'I have never been to  
 Не сѣм хѣдил в Пловдив *нѣкога*. Plovdiv.'  
 Не сѣм *нѣкога* хѣдил в Пловдив. (rare)

## VII. PREPOSITIONS

### Предлози

Prepositions are function words indicating by their meaning various relations between notional verbs (nouns, pronouns, verbs, numerals, etc.) Prepositions usually take an object. The preposition and its object form a prepositional group.

*без* затруднения 'without any difficulties'  
*по* мое мнѣние 'in my opinion'  
*на* морѣ 'at the seaside'

In the sentence prepositional groups often function as adverbial modifiers (of place, time, number, purpose, degree, reason, etc.)

*По тази причина* не бѣха 'For this reason they were not  
 приѣти. admitted.'  
 Самолѣтът кацна *преди пет* 'The plane landed five minutes  
 минути. ago.'

Quite similarly to English, the Bulgarian language has a great number of prepositions, which express various semantic relations. Prepositions may be classified into simple, compound and complex.

a) Simple prepositions consist of one syllable and are not normally stressed (they are proclitic). Nevertheless, they are always written separately. Sometimes, however, the logical stress may fall on a preposition:

- Как предпочѣтате чѣя - 'How do you prefer tea - with  
 сѣс или без захар? or without sugar?'  
 - *Без*, моля. 'No sugar, please.'

b) Compound prepositions are comparatively recent formations, consisting of a single preposition, which had merged with another

preposition, adverb or noun, e.g.:

*с-по-ред* 'according to' - Preposition - Preposition - Noun  
*Спорѣд* доктор Мѣлев смърт- 'According to Dr. Milev, the  
 та ѣ била причинѣна от от- cause of the death was poison-  
 равяне. ing.'

c) Complex prepositions consist of two or three words (usually combinations of Preposition + Noun + [Preposition]), which are written separately:

по отношение на 'regarding, as regards'  
 въз основа на 'on the basis of, in virtue of'  
 по повод на 'with reference to, in connection with'  
 независимо от 'in spite of, despite, regardless of'  
*По повод на* писмѣто, коѣто 'With reference to the letter  
 получихме мѣналата сѣдми- we received last week, certain  
 ца, трѣбва да направим нѣ- points have to be clarified.'  
 кои разяснения.  
 Трѣбва да взѣмем рѣшенѣе 'We must take a decision on the  
 въз основа на направените basis of the motions presented  
 вчѣра и днес предложѣния. yesterday and today.'

Some of the more frequently used prepositions in Modern Bulgarian have several meanings and may be used in different contexts. The prepositions are listed in alphabetic order and supplied with examples, illustrating their basic usage.

1. *без* 'without', '-less', 'to'  
 Той изглѣжда много по- 'He looks much better without  
 добре *без* очилѣ. his glasses on.'  
 Сѣра ѣ ѣсем *без* дѣсет. 'It's ten minutes to eight now.'

2. *в/във* 'in, into, at, on'  
 The variant *във* [vɐf] is used before words beginning with the letters *в* or *ф* in written speech. In oral language the variant *във* may be used in all cases.

The preposition *в/във* is used with verbs of motion, static verbs and with figurative meanings.

Note: the pronunciation of the preposition *в* is [f].

a) position in space:

Живѣя *във* Варна. 'I live in Varna.'  
 Ще хѣдя *във* Финлѣндия на 'I'm going to Finland on a



на специализация.

Тя се гмурна *във* водата и енергично заплува към лодката.

b) time:

Сестра ти не си беше вкъщи *в* шест часа.

Ще дойдеш ли с мен в болницата *във* вторник?

c) abstract meaning:

Трябва да платите *в* брой. Тази случка се е врязала дълбоко *в* паметта ми.

3. *вместо* 'instead of' Можеш ли да гледаш бебето *вместо* мен в събота?

Довечера предпочитам да отида на театър *вместо* да гледам телевизия.

4. *върху* 'on, upon, over, on top of, at'

a) the preposition *върху* may denote relation of position or movement over or across some surface in a literal or abstract sense. Косата ѝ падаше *върху* очите ѝ.

*Върху* банския си костюм носеше къса хавлиена рокля.

*Върху* лицето ѝ беше изпъсано недоумение.

Кучето се нахвърли *върху* него.

b) the preposition *върху* Дълго разсъждавах *върху* този проблем.

Дойдох в България да проведя изследване *върху* южнославянските езици.

5. *въпреки* 'in spite of, despite'

Прекърахме добре на морето

study trip.'

'She dived into the water and swam energetically towards the boat.'

'Your sister was not at home at six o'clock.'

'Will you come with me to the hospital on Tuesday?'

'You have to pay (in) cash.'

'The episode is sharply engraved in my mind.'

'Can you baby-sit for me on Saturday?'

'I'd rather go to the theatre tonight instead of watching TV.'

'Her hair hung down over her eyes.'

'She was wearing a short towel robe over her bathing suit.'

'She had a puzzled look on her face.'

'The dog rushed at him.'

may also denote reference.

'I spent a lot of time meditating on the problem.'

'I've come to Bulgarian to do some research into the South-Slavonic languages.'

*въпреки* лошото време.

Разбяхме го *въпреки* силния му акцент.

6. *до* 'next to, by, beside, near, till'

The preposition *до* is quite frequent and is used in relations of proximity and limit in space, time and quantity.

a) space:

Седнах *до* леглото ѝ.

Къщите им бяха една *до* друга.

Ще те изпратя *до* спирката.

b) time:

Обучението трае от три *до* пет години.

*До* тук добре.

Довиждане *до* утре.

*До* седем часа трябва да си напазарувал и да си се върнал.

c) quantity:

Напълнете епруветката *до* половината.

d) abstract meaning:

Пододохте ли молба *до* декана?

7. *за* 'for, about, on, in, to, 0 (no preposition)'

This is an extremely frequent preposition in Bulgarian and may denote a wide range of relations.

a) purpose:

Свиря на пиано *за* удоволствие.

Сега нямам настроение *за* приказки.

Той е много зает - няма време *за* губене.

Тя каза, че не може да ус-

seaside in spite of the bad weather.'

'We understood him in spite of his heavy accent.'

'I sat down by her bed.'

'Their homes were next to each other.'

'I'll see you off to the bus stop.'

'The training takes from three to five years.'

'So far so good.'

'See you tomorrow (Goodbye till tomorrow).'

'You must have done the shopping and come back by seven o'clock.'

'Fill half of the test-tube.'

'Have you sent in an application to the Dean?'

'I play the piano for pleasure.'

'I'm in no mood to chat now.'

'He is very busy and has no time to lose.'

'She said she couldn't make it

пее да дойде *за* вечеря.

*За* мен скучата е симптом на душевна оскудица.

In this (as well as in other functions) the preposition *за* often corresponds to *to* (no preposition) in English.

клечка *за* зъби

кошче *за* боклук

Национален фронт *за* освобож-  
дение

b) destination:

Изтичах да хванем авто-

буса *за* центъра на града.

Тръгнахме *за* селото в най-  
добро настроение.

c) contact:

Той държеше чашата *за* дъ-  
ното.

Краката ми залепваха *за* пътя.

d) beneficial:

Поръчах една кока-кола *за*  
нея, а *за* мен - уиски със  
сода.

Цветята, набрани *за* него,  
вехнеха и умираха в ръцете  
й.

e) exchange:

Сменям кола *за* вилно мяс-  
то.

d) reference:

The Bulgarian preposition *за* is frequently used with verbs of saying and thinking. In this meaning it corresponds to the English prepositions *about*, *of*, *on*, *concerning*, *regarding*, etc.

Те започнаха да ме разпит-  
ват подробно *за* кучето.

Обичам да разговарям *за*  
книги и филми.

Винаги задаваха по някой

for dinner.'

'For me boredom is a symptom  
of spiritual poverty.'

'tooth-pick'

'waste-paper basket'

'National Liberation Front'

'We ran to catch the bus for  
the town centre.'

We set out for the village in  
the best of moods.'

'He was holding the tumbler by  
its base.'

'My feet stuck to the road.'

'I ordered a Coke for her and  
a Scotch and soda for myself.'

'The flowers she had picked  
for him faded and died in  
her hands.'

'I exchange a car for summer-  
house land.'

'They asked me about the dog  
in detail.'

'I enjoy chatting about books  
and films.'

'There was always some ques-

въпрос *за* образованието.

g) temporal:

Не можах да се съсредоточа  
*за* дълго.

Тя отиде в Лондон *за* две  
седмички.

Метрото ще бъде построено  
*за* три години.

Отровата е достатъчно сил-  
на да убие човек *за* един  
час.

8. *зад* 'behind, at the back of'

The preposition is used with both static verbs and verbs of motion.

Две момчета седяха *зад* мен  
в автобуса.

Слънцето се скри *зад* един  
облак.

Киното е *зад* ъгъла.

'There were two boys sitting  
behind me on the bus.'

'The sun went behind a cloud.'

'The cinema house is round the  
corner.'

9. *заради* 'because of'

Ще закъснея заради нея.

10. *из* 'about, over, around, along'

The preposition is mainly used with verbs of motion and denotes movement without any definitive direction.

Тя прекъра сутринта, раз-  
хождайки се *из* тесните  
улички на стария град.

Маргарита пътуваше сама  
*из* цялата страна.

11. *извън* 'out of, outside'

Той живее *извън* града.

Можете да пушите само  
*извън* сградата.

12. *иззад* 'from behind'

Изведнъж *иззад* колата се  
появиха двама мъже.

'He lives out of town.'

'Smoking is allowed only  
outside the building.'

'Two men suddenly appeared  
from behind the car.'



### 13. *като* 'as, like, such as'

#### a) comparison:

Тя изглеждаше побледняла <i>като</i> платно.	'She looked as white as a sheet.'
Държиш се <i>като</i> дете.	'You are behaving like a child.'

#### b) in the capacity of:

През лятото работя <i>като</i> екскурзовод.	'In summer I work as a tourist guide.'
--	---

### 14. *край* 'along, beside, by the side of'

The preposition is used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs to denote relations of proximity.

Те имат вила <i>край</i> морето.	'They have a summer house by the sea.'
Наминй някой път <i>край</i> нас.	'Why don't you drop by and see us some day?'

### 15. *към* 'towards, to, for'

The preposition is often used with verbs of motion and denotes direction (or destination) in a spatial, temporal and figurative sense.

#### a) spatial:

Той махна с ръка и тръгна <i>към</i> входната врата.	'We waved and moved towards the front door.'
Той се отправя <i>към</i> задната част на магазина.	'He headed for the back of the store.'
Тя разсеяно посегна <i>към</i> парфюма.	'Idly, she reached for her perfume bottle.'

#### b) temporal:

Елате <i>към</i> пет часа.	'Come at about 5 o'clock.'
Тя трябва да е <i>към</i> 40 години.	'She must be about 40.'

#### c) attitude:

Почувствах враждебността им <i>към</i> моите предложения.	'I sensed their hostility to my proposals.'
--	--

### 16. *между* 'between, among'

The Bulgarian preposition *между* combines the meanings of the two English prepositions and may denote position, movement or distribution between two things or among more than two things (or people).

Трябва да отидете при сек- ретарката <i>между</i> четири и пет часа следобед.	'You'll have to go and see the secretary between 4.00 and 5.00 this afternoon.'
---	---

Чувствах се неудобно *между* 'I felt embarrassed amongst so  
толкова непознати хора. many strangers.'

*Между* другото, мисля, че 'By the way, I think you need  
трябва да отидеш да се по- a haircut.'  
стрижеш.

### 17. *на* 'of, on, to, 's, 0, for, at, in, into, by'

The preposition *на* is the most frequently used one in Bulgarian. It has a variety of meanings and corresponds to various prepositions as well as to the -'s possessive in English. Among some of the relations that it may denote are:

#### a) possession:

Колата <i>на</i> баща ми е повре- дена.	'My father's car is out of order.'
Резюмътата трябва да се из- пратят до края <i>на</i> месеца.	'The abstracts should be sub- mitted by the end of the month.'

#### b) dative relations:

Бихте ли показали <i>на</i> този чужденец къде да си паркй- ра колата?	'Would you show that foreigner where to park his car?'
Дай учебника <i>на</i> Мария, а не <i>на</i> Нели.	'Give the textbook to Maria, not to Nelly.'

#### c) spatial relations:

The preposition is used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs to denote position on or over some surface.

Речникът е <i>на</i> масата.	'The dictionary is on the table.'
Сложи чашата <i>на</i> масата.	'Put the glass on the table.'
Изпуснах вазата <i>на</i> пода.	'I dropped the vase onto the floor.'
Всички от семейството се- дяха <i>на</i> масата и обядваха.	'The whole family were sitting at the table and having lunch.'

#### d) purpose of destination:

Ще ходите ли <i>на</i> кино довече- ра?	'Are you going to the cinema tonight?'
Могла ли да ви покана <i>на</i> пе- сторант?	'May I invite you to a restaurant?'
Тя дойде ли <i>на</i> срещата?	'Did she turn up for the appointment?'

#### e) temporal:

Тя е <i>на</i> 25 години	'She is 25.'
--------------------------	--------------

Роден съм **на** пети октомври, 'I was born on October 5 th  
1968 година. 1968.'

**На** другата сутрин се съ- 'On the next morning I woke up  
буди с ужасно главоболие. with a splitting headache.'

18. **над** 'over, above'

The preposition is used both with static verbs and with verbs of motion to denote spatial position above or higher than something.

Самолът се издигна **над** 'The plane rose above the  
облаците. clouds.'

Той вероятно е **над 50** години. 'He must be over 50.'

В приказките доброто възтър- 'In fairy tales good  
жествува **над** злото. usually triumphs over evil.'

Дали щях да злорадстват 'I wondered if they were going  
**над** моето нещастие? to gloat over my misfortune.'

19. **около** 'round, around, about'

a) position encircling something - in this meaning the preposition is used both with static verbs and with verbs of motion.

Земятa се върти **около** 'The earth moves round the  
слънцето. sun.'

Някои от тях бяха насяда- 'Some of people were sitting  
ли, а други танцুваха and others were dancing around  
**около** огъня. the fire.'

b) proximity.

Омъжих се преди **около** два 'I got married about two  
месеца. months ago.'

Ще струва някъде **около** пет 'It'll cost somewhere about  
хиляди лева. five thousand levs.'

20. **освен** 'except, besides'

The Bulgarian preposition **освен** has two distinct meanings:

a) in addition to, including

**Освен** английски, говоря 'Besides English I speak Ger-  
немски и испански. man and Spanish.'

b) with the exception of, excluding

Никой друг не знае за това 'Nobody knows about it except  
**освен** Нели. Nelly.'

**Освен** леко вие не на свят, 'Except for a slight dizzi-  
не чувствам нищо особено. ness, I don't feel anything peculiar.'

21. **от** 'from, away from, out of, by, of, off, than'

a) The basic meaning of the preposition is source or starting point in space or time. It may be used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs.

Ще вземем такси **от** летище- 'We'll take a taxi from the  
то до хотела. airport to the hotel.'

Ще отсъствам **от** работа за 'I'll be absent from the  
две седмици. office for two weeks.'

b) removal

Той бършеше потта **от** лице- 'He was wiping sweat off his  
то си. face.'

c) material

Огърлицата е **от** чисто злато. 'The necklace is of solid gold.'

d) cause

Бях потисната **от** монотонния 'I was depressed by the mono-  
и скучен живот в селото. tony and boredom of the village life.'

Тя плачеше **от** радост. 'She was crying for joy.'

e) comparison

Чувствам се по-щастлива **от** 'I feel happier than ever  
всякога. before.'

Тя е по-висока **от** него. 'She is taller than him.'

22. **относно** 'concerning, about, regarding'

Не желая да отговарям на 'I refuse to answer questions  
въпроси **относно** моя личен concerning my private life.'  
живот.

23. **по** 'on, over, along, by, in, through'

a) The preposition is used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs to denote position or movement over some surface.

Дрехите му бяха разпиляни 'His clothes were strewn all  
**по** пода. over the floor.'

**По** коя улица трябва да 'Which street must we  
вървим, за да стигнем до take to get to the railway  
гарата? station?'

b) temporal

**По** това време бях болен и 'At that time I was ill and I  
**по** цели нощи не спях. used to stay awake all nights long.'

c) manner and cause



Всичко вървеше **по** план. 'Everything went according to plan.'  
 Стояха **по** групички и разговаряха оживено. 'They were standing in groups and were talking animatedly.'  
 Адреналинът е открит **по** погрешка. 'Adrenalin was discovered through a mistake.'  
 Катастрофата беше станала **по** невнимане. 'The accident happened through carelessness.'  
**По** общо съгласие, той беше най-подходящият кандидат. 'By common consent he was the most suitable candidate.'  
 d) quality  
 Той е тих **по** природа. 'He is a quiet man by nature.'  
 e) reference  
 Купихте ли си учебника **по** химия? 'Have you bought the chemistry textbook?'  
 Преподавателят **по** социология ще изнесе серия от лекции **по** интересни теми. 'The lecturer in sociology will be giving a series of lectures on some interesting topics.'

24. **под** 'under, underneath, beneath, in'  
 Те вървяха и пяха **под** дъжда. 'They were walking and singing in the rain.'  
 Реших до следвам право **под** влияние на родителите си. 'I decided to study law under the influence of my parents.'  
 Те ме държаха **под** напрежение. 'They kept me under stress.'  
 Намерихте ли нещо **под** снег? 'Did you find anything under the snow?'

25. **покрай** 'along, past, via, by, near'  
 The preposition is used mainly with verbs of motion and denotes relations of proximity.  
 Ще минете **покрай** една книжарница и един цветарски магазин. 'You will walk past a bookshop and a florist's.'  
 Той изтича **покрай** мен. 'He ran past me.'

26. **пomeждy** 'between'  
 This preposition is equal to **meждy** used with the short form of the dative personal pronoun or personal reflective pronoun.  
**пomeждy** ни = **meждy** нас  
**пomeждy** им = **meждy** тях  
**пomeждy** си = **meждy** себе си

27. **поради** 'because of, on account of'  
 Въздържам се от пиене **по-ради** заболяването си. 'I abstain from drinking on account of my poor health.'

28. **посред** 'in the middle of'  
 Върнах се вкъщи **посред** нощ. 'I came back home in the middle of the night.'

29. **пред** 'in front of, before, ahead of'  
**Пред** съюзите "че" и "ако" се пише запетая. 'Comma is written before the conjunctions "che" and "ako".'  
**Пред** къщата има два стари дъба. 'There are two old oak trees in front of the house.'  
 Никого не беше пяла **пред** толкова отбрана публика. 'She had never performed before such a select audience.'

30. **преди** 'ago, before, prior to'  
 While the preposition **пред** denotes spatial, **преди** is mostly used to denote temporal relations.  
 Това се случи точно **преди** Коледа. 'This happened just before Christmas.'  
 Мостът е построен **преди** повече от двеста години. 'The bridge was built over 200 years ago.'

31. **през** 'through, during, by way of, out of'  
 a) spatial relations  
 Трябва да минете първо **през** митницата. 'You should go through Customs first.'  
 Ще пътуваме до Лондон **през** Брюксел. 'We'll fly to London via Brussels.'

b) temporal relations  
**През** войната е бил във военновъздушните сили. 'He had been in the air force during the war.'  
 За пръв път се срещнахме **през** пролетта на 1982 г. 'We met first in the spring of 1982.'

32. **при** 'at, near, with, by'  
 a) spatial and temporal relations  
 Той живее **при** родителите си. 'He lives with his parents.'  
 Може би трябва да отидете **при** адвокат. 'You may have to see a lawyer about this.'  
 Свържете се с него **при**. 'Contact him at the earliest'

първа възможност.

*При* тези думи всички се разсмяха.

b) circumstance

Дори *при* благоприятни условия задачата ви никак не е лесна.

33. *против* 'against, contrary to'

Колко души са гласували *против* предложението?

Мисля, че тя няма нищо *против* теб.

Трябва да постъпя *против* принципите си.

34. *с/със* 'with'

The preposition is quite similar in function to the English preposition **with** and denotes mainly relations of togetherness and instrumental relations. The variant *със* [səs] is used before words beginning with the letters *с* and *з* in written language. In oral speech *със* is used in front of any word no matter the letter it begins with.

a) relations of togetherness

Тя разговаряше *с* един мъж *с* брада и очила.

Очите ѝ се напълниха *със* сълзи.

Имаме търговски отношения *с* много страни.

b) instrumental relations

Нарежи шунката *с* онзи нож.

Вратата е отключена *с* шперц.

35. *след*

a) spatial relations

Вървете *след* мен.

Тя гневно затвори вратата *след* себе си.

b) temporal relations

opportunity.'

'Everyone laughed on hearing these words.'

'Even under favourable circumstances your task is far from easy.'

'How many people have voted against the proposal?'

'I think she has nothing against you.'

'I'll have to do it against my principles.'

'She was talking to a spectacled man with a beard.'

'Her eyes filled with tears.'

'We have trade relations with a lot of countries.'

'Slice the ham with that knife.'

'The door has been unlocked with a master-key.'

'after, behind, in'

'Please, follow me.'

'She shut the door angrily behind her.'

Ще се върна *след* малко.

36. *според* 'according to'

*Според* картата до езерото оставаха още пет километра.

37. *сред*

Той беше доста известен *сред* ценителите на шахмата в страната.

38. *срещу* 'against, opposite, facing, over, across'

The preposition is used both with static verbs and with verbs of motion.

Помолих мъжа *срещу* мен да ми свали кufара.

Имаше няколко стари къщи *срещу* реката.

Бяха явно настръдени *срещу* средствата за масова информация.

39. *у* 'at'

The preposition is used both with verbs of motion and with static verbs and is sometimes replaceable by the preposition *при* and *до*.

Ще си бъдеш ли *у* дома довечера?

*У* нас често идват гости.

*У* когото е писалката ми?

'I'll be back in a little while.'

'According to the map there were five more kilometres to the lake.'

'amidst, among, in'

'He was quite famous among the chess fans in the country.'

'I asked the man opposite me to take down my suitcase.'

'There were a few old houses facing the river.'

'They were openly antagonistic against the mass media.'

'Will you be at home tonight?'

'We often have guests at our place.'

'Who has got my pen?'

**Note:** This preposition is used with **plural** forms of long accusative pronouns to denote someone's place.

*у* нас 'at my/our place'

*у* вас 'at your place'

*у* тях 'at his/her/their place'

40. *чрез* 'through, by means of'

Запознах се с нея *чрез* брат си.

'I was introduced to her through my brother.'

Some prepositions combine with conjunctions to form complex conjunctions: *без да* 'without', *въпреки че* 'although', *преди да* 'before', *след като* 'after', etc.

Приличам на баща си, *въпреки*

'I look like my father al-



*ки че* не сѣм тѣлкова ви-  
сѣк. though I am not as tall as  
him.'

Similarly to English, some prepositions in Bulgarian coincide with adverbs and function either as adverbs or as prepositions.

Дойдох *предѣ* пет минути. 'I arrived five minutes ago.'  
(preposition)

Всѣчко си бѣше кѣкѣто *предѣ*. 'Everything was the same as  
(adverb) before.'

## VIII. CONJUNCTIONS

### *Съюзи*

Conjunctions do not change in form. They function as connectors between notional words, phrases, clauses or sentences, thus providing coherence in a text.

In terms of structure the conjunctions in Bulgarian are classified into simple and complex (or composite).

a) simple conjunctions:

<i>а</i>	'but, and, while'
<i>ако</i>	'if'
<i>аля</i>	'but'
<i>дали</i>	'whether, if'
<i>и</i>	'and'
<i>или</i>	'or'
<i>като</i>	'as'
<i>но</i>	'but'
<i>че</i>	'that', etc.

Most of the morphologically simple conjunctions had the same function in old Bulgarian and are also called 'true' conjunctions.

b) composite conjunctions

<i>без да</i>	'without'
<i>за да</i>	'in order to'
<i>освен да</i>	'except'
<i>въпреки че</i>	'although'
<i>след като</i>	'after'
<i>затова че</i>	'because'
<i>такà че</i>	'so, thus', etc.

A number of conjunctions form correlative pairs:

<i>ниѣто ... ниѣто</i>	'neither ... nor'
<i>или ... или</i>	'either ... or'
<i>ту ... ту</i>	now ... now'
<i>хем ... хем</i>	'both ... and', etc.

Relative and Interrogative pronouns often function as conjunctions.

(cf. Pronouns)

Не знам *коя* от книгите е  
пѣ-хубава. 'I don't know which of the  
books is better.'

*Каквѣто* и да кàжеш, ще  
сгрешѣш. 'Whatever you say, you'll be  
wrong.'

Some adverbs with interrogative and relative meaning also function as conjunctions.

Той ѣскаше да ме наѣчи *как*  
да плѣвам бруст. 'He wanted to teach me how to  
do the breaststroke.'

*Наквѣто* и да се обѣрнешѣ,  
виждаше мѣкове. 'Wherever he turned he saw  
poppies.'

Two major types of conjunctions are distinguished according to their syntactic function and to the semantic relations they denote:

a) coordinating conjunctions (сѣчинителни сѣюзи)

Coordinating conjunctions connect homogeneous parts of a simple sentence (words, phrases), clauses of equal rank or independent clauses.

Щѣ се отбѣя у вас в сѣбота  
*или* в недѣля. 'I'll call you on Saturday or  
on Sunday.'

Писанѣто му вѣрвѣше бавно  
*и* мѣчѣтелно. 'His writing was slow and  
painful.'

Щѣ ѣмаме сѣбрàние, *но* нѣма  
да обѣсѣждаме тѣзи проблемѣ. 'We'll have a meeting but we  
won't discuss that issue.'

Similarly to English, the conjunctions in Bulgarian express four types of coordinating connections, which allow for different shades of meaning depending on the context:

1. Copulative (сѣединителни)

*и* 'and'

Правѣте каквѣто ви се кàз-  
ва *и* нѣма да сѣѣркате. 'Do just what you are told and  
you won't be wrong.'

*хем ... хем* 'both ... and'

*Хем* се вѣлнѣвах, *хем* се тре- 'I was both excited and worri-

вѡжех за бѡдещите си перспективи.	ed about my future prospects.'
<i>ниѡто</i> 'not'	
Дорѡ за момѡнт не сѡ сѡм-няваше, <i>ниѡто</i> се страхѡваше от евентуѡлен провѡл.	'He didn't doubt it for a moment, nor had he any fears about a possible failure.'
<i>ниѡто ... ниѡто</i> 'neither ... nor'	
Тѡй <i>ниѡто</i> пѡе, <i>ниѡто</i> пѡи.	'He neither drinks nor smokes.'
<i>не сѡмо ... но</i> 'not only ... but', etc.	
Смятам, че <i>не сѡмо</i> ще се разочарѡвате, <i>но</i> и мнѡго ще съжѡлявате, аѡо направѡите товѡ.	'I think you won't only be disappointed but you'll be extremely sorry if you do that.'
2. Disjunctive (сѡотносителни)	
<i>или</i> 'or'	
Искате ли да обѡдваме сегѡ <i>или</i> да почѡкаме да дѡйдат и остѡналите?	'Shall we start lunch now or wait for the rest to come?'
<i>дали</i> ... <i>или</i> 'whether ... or'	
Не зѡѡеше <i>дали</i> да плѡче <i>или</i> да се смѡе.	'She didn't know whether to laugh or cry.'
<i>ту ... ту</i> 'sometimes ... at others, now ... now'	
<i>Ту</i> ми прѡща кѡрѡчки, <i>ту</i> му се обѡжда по телефѡна, нѡкога не ми пѡише писмѡ.	'Now she sends postcards, now she telephones, but she never writes letters.'
<i>я ... я</i> 'either ... or' (colloquial), etc.	
ѡтре <i>я</i> ще вѡлѡ, <i>я</i> ще бѡде мнѡго ветровѡто.	'It's either going to rain tomorrow, or it's going to be very windy.'

### 3. Adversative (противѡположни)

<i>а</i> 'but, and'	
Дѡждѡт се усѡи, <i>а</i> не сѡм си взел чѡдѡр.	'The rain has become quite heavy and I've left my umbrella at home.'
<i>но</i> 'but'	
Зѡѡя, <i>но</i> нѡма да ти кѡжа.	'I know it but I'm not going to tell you.'
<i>сѡмо че</i> 'but, however'	
Щѡх да дѡйда, <i>сѡмо че</i> бѡх	'I would have come but I was

мнѡго зѡет.	very busy.'
<i>алѡ</i> 'and yet, yet'	
Цѡлѡта колѡ бѡше изпочѡ-пена, <i>алѡ</i> по нѡго нѡмаше и драсѡтѡна.	'The car was quite smashed up yet he was without a scratch.'
<i>обѡче</i> 'However', etc.	
Бѡх сигурен, че ще полѡча нагрѡдата, <i>обѡче</i> нѡкоѡ ме бѡше изпревѡрил.	'I was hoping I would get the prize. However, someone had been ahead of me.'
4. Causal or Resultative (зѡключителни)	
<i>зѡтовѡ</i> 'that's why, therefore, and so'	
Колѡта не ѡ нѡва - <i>зѡтовѡ</i> е пѡ-ѡвѡина.	'The car is second-hand, so it's cheaper.'
<i>тѡкѡ че</i> 'therefore, so'	
Нѡрѡчно ѡстѡвихме вратѡта ѡтвѡрена, <i>тѡкѡ че</i> да глѡ-даме кѡй минѡва.	'We left the door open, so that we could see who was passing by.'
<i>следѡвателно</i> 'therefore, thus'	
Наблѡдѡва се, че продавѡ-чите ѡмѡт предпочѡтѡния кѡм привлѡкѡтелните клиѡнти.	'It has been observed that shop-assistants show preference towards attractive customers. Thus, services seem to be influenced by physical attractiveness.'
<i>Следѡвателно</i> ѡбслѡжванѡто се влѡе ѡт вѡншнѡстѡта.	

*ѡто зѡѡѡ* 'so, hence', etc.

Аз не зѡѡех добрѡ англѡй-ски, а тѡй вѡѡщѡ не разбѡ-раше бѡлгарски, <i>ѡто зѡѡѡ</i> разѡвѡряхме чрѡз превѡдѡч.	'I spoke very little English and he didn't understand any Bulgarian, so we talked through an interpreter.'
Експеримѡнтѡт не ѡ прѡвѡ-ден прѡвилно. <i>ѡто зѡѡѡ</i> ре-зѡлтѡтите не сѡ убѡдѡтел-ни.	'The experiment has not been properly carried out. Hence, the results are not convinc- ing.'

### b) Subordinating conjunctions (подчинителни сѡѡѡи)

Subordinating conjunctions usually join subordinate clauses to main clauses. They may be subclassified according to the types of subordinate clauses into:



1. Conjunctions joining the attributive clauses to the main clause. Usually relative and interrogative pronouns, adverbs and particles.

Това е човекът, **който** спаси детето **ви**.

'That's the man who saved your child.'

**Искам да знам** броя на хората, **който** ще присъстват на конференцията.

'I'd like to know the number of the people who are going to attend the conference.'

Статията е написана от проф. Фърт, за **когото** сигурно сте чували.

'The paper was written by prof. Firth, of whom you must have heard.'

Не можехме да решим **къде** ще бъде най-добре да прекараме ваканцията.

'We couldn't make up our minds about the best place to spend our holiday.'

Не мога да си отговоря на въпроса **защо** толкова се страхувам от това.

'I can't find an answer to the question why I fear this so much.'

2. Conjunctions joining the objective clause to the main clause: **че, да** as well as interrogative pronouns and interrogative adverbs.

In contrast to English, it is impossible to drop the conjunction **че**, although the Bulgarian sentences correspond quite often to English contact clauses, in which the conjunction **that** is optional and often dropped.

Той каза, **че** е истина.

'He said it was true.'

Погледнах навън и видях, **че** си бяха тръгнали.

'I looked out and saw (that) they had driven away.'

Не мога да разбера **кой** ми е оставил това съобщение.

'I can't find out who has left this message for me.'

Не зная **дали** ще имаме контролно днес.

'I don't know whether we are going to have a test today.'

Тя ме попита **колко** е часът.

'She asked me what time it was.'

Не бях сигурен **как** ще се чувствам като глава на семейство.

'I was not sure how I would feel about being the head of a family.'

3. Conjunctions joining the adverbial clause to the main clause. Adverbial conjunctions introduce adverbial clauses and are subdivided into: conjunctions of:

#### place

Моля те, останй там, **където** си.

'Please, stay where you are.'

#### time

Някой ми е ударил колата, **докато** е била паркирана пред киното.

'My car got a severe bump while it was parked in front of a cinema house.'

#### purpose

Дойдох **да** поема службата си.

'I have come to take up my job.'

Трябва да тръгнем много рано, **за да** стигнем навреме.

'We'll have to start very early to get there on time.'

#### cause

Той отсъства, **защото** е болен.

'He is absent because he is ill.'

**Тъй като** беше неделя, решихме да поспим до по-късно.

'Since it was Sunday we decided to sleep late.'

Не можах да му откажа, **понеже** сме приятели.

'Being friends with him I couldn't very well turn him down.'

#### result and consequence

Толкова ми се спи, **че** едвам си държа очите отворени.

'I feel so sleepy that I can hardly keep my eyes open.'

#### manner and comparison

Той вървеше, **като** се поклащаше.

'He was walking in a swaying manner.'

Живеем **такъ, както** са живели родителите ни.

'We live like our parents used to.'

#### condition, etc.

Те няма да стигнат навреме, **ако** не бързат.

'They will not get there in time unless they hurry.'

Тя каза, **че** ще дойде, **при условие че** може да доведе и дъщеря си.

'She said she would come, provided she might bring her daughter.'

## IX. PARTICLES

### Частички

Particles are function words with invariable morphological structure.

The particles in Bulgarian are classified into three groups:

1. Particles used in analytical grammatical forms.

*ще* - for future tense forms

*Ще* се върна след половин час. 'I'll be back in half an hour.'

*по-*, *най-* - for the comparative and superlative degrees

Моля, говорете *по-*сильно. 'Will you speak up, please.'

*нека да* - for first and third person imperative

*Нека да* си тръгваме. 'Let's go.'

*недей*, *недейте* - for negative imperatives

*Недейте* му задава никакви въпроси. 'Don't ask him any questions.'

2. Particles used for the formation of reflexive verbs - *се* and *си*.

*Ще се* обръсна. 'I am going to shave.'

*Ще си* обръсна брадата. 'I'll shave off my beard.'

3. Particles that may change the meaning of the syntactic form of a sentence or some of its parts.

a) Interrogative particles

*ли* - This particle forms general questions and may be placed after various parts of the sentence, providing in combination with word order and intonation different shades of meaning and emphasis.

В *сряда ли* ще ходиш на тенис? 'Is it on Wednesday that you are going to play tennis?'

На *тенис ли* ще ходиш в сряда? 'Is it to the tennis courts that you are going on Wednesday?'

С *тях ли* ще играеш тенис в сряда? 'Is it them that you are going to play tennis with on Wednesday?'

*дали* - this particle is always at the beginning of interrogative sentences.

*Дали* ще бъдат враждебно стрдени или безразлични към мен? 'I wonder whether they'll be hostile or just indifferent towards me.'

*нали* - This particle may be used in initial or final position in a sentence and usually forms sentences, which correspond to English tag questions.

*Нали* уж беше заета днес? 'You said you were busy today, didn't you?'

Няма да забравиш да ми се обадиш, *нали*? 'You won't forget to give me a ring, will you?'

*нима* - This particle is placed only in initial position and usually forms exclamatory sentences.

*Нима* това е истина! 'Can that be true!'

*Нима* може той да е говорил такива неща по мой адрес! 'Is it possible that he said such things about me!'

b) Positive particles

*да* 'yes'

- Хареса ли ти филмът? 'Did you like the film?'

- *Да*, много. 'Yes, a lot.'

*аха*, *амй* - These particles are mainly used in dialects and colloquial or informal speech.

- Откъде си? 'Where do you come from?'

- От село Ракитово. 'From Rakitovo.'

- *Аха*, знам го. Бил съм там. 'Oh, yes. I know it. I've been there.'

- Данчо, помниш ли Маргарита? 'Dancho, do you remember Margaret?'

- Помня я, *амй*. Забравя ли се толкова красиво момиче! 'Why, of course I remember her. Can one forget such a lovely girl.'

c) Negative particles

*не* 'no, not'

- Гледа ли снощи мача по телевизията? 'Did you watch the match on television last night?'

- *Не*, *не* го гледах. *Не* си бях вкъщи. 'No, I didn't. I wasn't at home.'

*Не* всички харесват тази пиеса. 'Not everyone likes this play.'

*ни*, *нищо* - These particles are usually used as intensifiers in negative sentences.

Не можях да чуя *ни* дума заради тях. 'I couldn't hear a single word because of them.'

*Нищо* стотинка не ми е останала. 'I haven't got a single penny left.'

Те не ми помогнаха *нищо* веднъж. 'They didn't help me even once.'

d) Particles with modal meanings

*Хайде* да не се караме. 'Let's not quarrel.'

*Дано* да не закъснеем! 'I do hope we aren't late.'

Ех, *да* не бях те послушал! 'I wish I hadn't done as you said!'



## LITERATURE

1. Андрейчин, Л. Основна българска граматика. София, 1978.
2. Андрейчин, Л., Попов, К., Стоянов Ст. Граматика на българския език, София, 1977.
3. Атанасова Т. и др. Английска граматика в сравнение с българския език (2-зв изд.), София, 1977.
4. Георгиева, Е. Словоред на простото изречение в българския книжовен език. София, 1974.
5. Граматика на съвременния български книжовен език. Т. 1-3, София, 1982-1983.
6. Данчев, А. Контрастивна лингвистика, анализ на грешките и чуждоезиково обучение. - Съпоставително езикознание и чуждоезиково обучение. Великотърновски университет "Кирил и Методий", 1980.
7. Данчев, А. Към фонологичната характеристика на "българския" междинен език. - Съпоставително езикознание и чуждоезиково обучение. София, 1980, кн. 2.
8. Додова, Л., Кацарова, В. и Павлова, А. Кратка граматика на английския език. (2-ро изд.), София, 1982.
9. Кръстев, Б. Морфология на българския език в 187 типови таблици. София, 1985.
10. Мирчев, К. Българският език през вековете. София, 1964.
11. Мирчев, К. Историческа граматика на българския език. София, 1978.
12. Молхова, Ж. и др. Английска граматика в сравнение с български език. Синтаксис. София, 1965.
13. Ницолова, Р. Прагматичен аспект на изречението в българския книжовен език. София, 1984.
14. Пашов, П. и Ницолова, Р. Помагало по българска морфология. Глагол. София, 1976.
15. Пенчев, Й. Структура на българското изречение. София, 1983.
16. Петрова, Ст. Gramatica de la lingua Bulgara, Sofia, 1986.
17. Попов, К. Помагало по български синтаксис. София, 1979.
18. Попов, К. Синтактичното съгласуване в български език. София, 1964.
19. Попов, К. Съвременен български език. Синтаксис. София, 1984.

20. Ранкова, М., Иванова, Цв. Английска граматика, София, 1980.
21. Станков, В. Глаголният вид в българския книжовен език. София, 1980.
22. Стоянов, Ст. Граматика на българския книжовен език. Фонетика и морфология. София, 1980.
23. Холидей, А. Сопоставление языков. Вопросы теории перевода в зарубежной лингвистике. Москва, 1978.
24. Danchev, A., Nachkova, E, B. Vousheva, N. Stoilova, T. Kmetova, I. Angelova, P. Benatova, K. Tasseva, E. Todeva. English for Bulgarians, Sofia, 1958.
25. Minkoff, M. An English grammar, Sofia, 1958.
26. Petrova, St. Gramatica de la lingua Bulgara (curso breve para hispanohablantes). Sofia, 1985.
27. Pulkina, I. M. A short Russian reference grammar. Moscow, 3rd edition.
28. Scatton, E. A. A Reference Grammar of Modern Bulgarian, Columbus, Ohio, Slavica Publishers Inc., 1984.
- 29s. Swan, M. Practical English Usage, Oxford University Press, 1980, Second Edition, 1995.

## CONTENTS

Some Basic Data About the Bulgarian Language .....	5
Preface .....	5

### Part One

#### PHONETICS (ФОНЕТИКА)

Vowels (Гласни) .....	10
Unstressed Vowels (Неударени гласни) .....	12
Consonants (Съгласни) .....	12
Palatal Consonants (Палатални съгласни) .....	19
Stress (Ударение) .....	19
Phonetic Alterations (Фонемни редувания) .....	22
Metathesis (Метатеза) .....	27

### Part Two

#### MORPHOLOGY (МОРФОЛОГИЯ)

I. Nouns (Съществителни имена) .....	32
Gender (Под) .....	32
Number (Число) .....	34
Determination of Nouns (Членуване на съществителните имена) .....	41
Use of the Definite Article (Употреба на определителния член) .....	44
Formation of Nouns (Образуване на съществителните имена) .....	49
II. Adjectives (Прилагателни имена) .....	55
Gender (Под) .....	56
Plural of adjectives (Множествено число на прилагателните имена) ..	57
The Use of the Definite Article with Adjectives (Членуване на прилагателните имена) .....	58
Degrees of Comparison (Степени на сравнение) .....	60
Formation of Adjectives (Образуване на прилагателните имена) .....	61
III. Numerals (Числителни имена) .....	67
Cardinal Numerals (Бройни числителни) .....	67
Ordinal Numerals (Редни числителни) .....	72
IV. Pronouns (Местоимения) .....	78
1. Personal Pronouns (Лични местоимения) .....	78
2. Possessive Pronouns (Притежателни местоимения) .....	81

3. Reflexive Pronouns (Възвратни местоимения) .....	86
4. Demonstrative Pronouns (Показателни местоимения) .....	91
5. Interrogative Pronouns (Въпросителни местоимения) .....	93
6. Relative Pronouns (Относителни местоимения) .....	96
7. Indefinite Pronouns (Неопределителни местоимения) .....	97
8. Negative Pronouns (Отрицателни местоимения) .....	99
9. Generalizing Pronouns (Обобщителни местоимения) .....	101
V. Verbs (Глаголи) .....	103
5.1. Classification of Verbs (Класификация на глаголите) .....	103
A. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs (Преходни и непреходни глаголи) .....	103
B. Personal and Impersonal Verbs (Лични и безлични глаголи) .....	106
C. Non-Reflexive and Reflexive Verbs (Невъзвратни и възвратни глаголи) .....	107
D. Simple and Compound Verbs (Прости и сложни глаголи) .....	109
5.2. Grammatical Categories of the Verb (Грамматически категории на глагола) .....	109
1. Person and Number (Лице и число) .....	109
2. Aspect (Вид на глагола) .....	110
3. The Tense System (Глаголните времена) .....	111
3.1. The Present Tense (Сегашно време) .....	112
3.2. The Imperfect Past (Минало несвършено време) .....	116
3.3. The Aorist Past Tense (Минало свършено време -аорист) .....	120
3.4. The Perfect Tense (Минало неопределено време) .....	130
3.5. The Past Perfect Tense (Минало предварително време) .....	134
3.6. The Future Tense (Бъдеще време) .....	136
3.7. The Future in the Past Tense (Бъдеще време в миналото) .....	141
3.8. The Future Perfect Tense (Бъдеще предварително време) .....	142
3.9. The Future Perfect in the Past Tense (Бъдеще предварително време в миналото) .....	144
4. Voice of the Verb (Залог на глагола) .....	147
Formation of the Passive Voice (Образуване на страдателния залог) .....	147
5. Mood of the Verb ((Наклонение на глагола) .....	149
5.1. The Indicative Mood (Изявително наклонение) .....	150
5.2. The Imperative Mood (Повелително наклонение) .....	150
5.3. The Conditional Mood (Условно наклонение) .....	154



5.4. The Renarrated Mood (Преизказно наклонение) .....	157
6. Non-Finite Verb Forms (Нелични глаголни форми) .....	162
6.1. Participles (Причастия) .....	162
A. The Active Present Participle (Сегашно деятелно причастие) .....	162
B. The Active Imperfect Past Participle (Минало несвършено деятелно причастие) .....	164
C. The Active Aorist Past Participle (Минало свършено деятелно причастие) .....	165
D. The Passive Past Participle ((Минало страдателно причастие) .....	167
6.2. Verbal Adverbs (Деепричастия) .....	170
6.3. Verbal Nouns (Отглаголни съществителни) .....	171
6.4. The Infinitive (Инфинитив) .....	173
7. Verb Formation (Образуване на глаголите) .....	174
7.1. Derivation of Verbs of the Perfective Aspect (Образуване на глаголи от свършен вид) .....	174
7.2. Derivation of Imperfective Verbs (Образуване на глаголи от несвършен вид) .....	182
7.3. Derivation of Verbs from other grammatical Categories (Образуване на глаголи от други граматически категории) .....	183
VI. Adverbs (Наречия) .....	185
VII. Prepositions (Предлози) .....	188
VIII. Conjunctions (Съюзи) .....	202
IX. Particles (Частии) .....	207
Literature .....	210

Evgenia Antova,  
Ekaterina Boytchinova,  
Poly Benatova  
(второ преработено издание)

**A SHORT GRAMMAR OF BULGARIAN  
FOR ENGLISH SPEAKING LEARNERS**

Second revised edition: Ekaterina Boytchinova

Editor: Prof. Stefka Petrova

Editors of the first edition (1991):

prof. Andrei Danchev prof. Stefka Petrova

Печатни коли 13.5

ISBN 954-91197-1-8

Издават: "АВМ Комерс" ЕТ, тел.: 943 39 66, 048 92 51 66

"АСПА" СД, тел.: 981 23 59, 55 89 86

София 2002



Реша <i>се</i> .	'I comb myself.'
Реша <i>си</i> косата.	'I comb my hair.'
Облякох <i>се</i> .	'I've dressed (myself).'
Облякох <i>си</i> новата рокля.	'I've put on my new dress.'

In Russian the reflexive particle is spelt together with the verb. It is *-сь* for first person singular and plural and *-ся* for all the rest verb forms.

Я одеваюсь.	'I am putting on my clothes.'
Мальчик одевается.	'The boy is putting on his clothes.'
Мать причёсывается.	'The mother is combing her hair.'

These verbs in Bulgarian also occur as non-reflexive (ordinary) verbs and are mostly used transitively (with a direct object):

Той ѝ помогна да облече децата.	'He helped her dress the children.'
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------

b) Reflexive verbs are used to make passive sentences. Only transitive verbs form passives.

Децата <i>се</i> възпитават от родителите си.	'Children are brought up by their parents.'
Тук не <i>се</i> пуши.	'No smoking (here).'
Как се казва тази местност?	'What's this place called?'

In Russian the corresponding passive:

В нашей лаборатории проводятся эксперименты.	'Experiments are being carried out in our laboratory.'
--	--

The same example in Bulgarian:

В нашата лаборатория се провеждат експерименти.

c) There is a group of reflexive verbs which are used intransitively and some of them do not have corresponding non-reflexive forms:

Bulgarian	Russian	English
Страхувам <i>се</i> .	Боюсь.	'I am afraid.'
Вълнува <i>се</i> .	Волнуется.	'He/she is excited.'
Гордея <i>се</i> .	Горжусь.	'I am proud.'

d) There are some impersonal reflexive verbs such as:

Съмва <i>се</i> .	'Dawn is breaking.'
Смрачава <i>се</i> .	'It's getting dark.'
Спи ми <i>се</i> .	'I feel sleepy.', etc.

e) Reciprocal verbs. The Subject is usually in the plural. Only

transitive verbs occur in this category - срещаме *се* 'to meet (each other)', прегръщаме *се* 'to embrace (each other)', пишем *си* 'to write letters (to each other)', поздравяваме *се* 'to greet (each other)', запознаваме *се* 'to get acquainted (with each other)', etc.

Ние *се* разбираме добре. 'We get along well (with each other).'

Вече два месеца не *си* говорим. 'We've not been on speaking terms for two months now.'

In Russian the corresponding verbs are also reflexive: встречаться 'to meet (each other)', обниматься 'to embrace (each other)', переписываться 'to write letters (to each other)', здороваться 'to shake hands, to greet (each other)', знакомиться 'to get acquainted (with each other)', etc.

## D. Simple and Compound Verbs

### Прости и сложни глаголи

Simple verbs have a single root morpheme:

пиш/а	'I write'
пиш/еш	'You write'
пре/пиш/ах	'I have copied'

Compound verbs have more than one root morpheme. The root morphemes are usually linked by the linking vowels [o] or [e]. Compound verbs are usually written as one word:

рък/о/мъхам	'to gesticulate'
рък/о/въдя	'to guide/manage'
лъж/е/свидетелствам	'to commit perjury'

## 5.2. GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES OF THE VERB

### 1. Person and Number

#### Лице и число

Verbs in Bulgarian have no infinitive form. They have morphological markers (endings) for the first, second and third person singular and plural. The basic form of the verb is the first person singular of the Present Tense. The person and number markers differ for the different conjugations and tenses of the verbs. Compare for example the Present Tense forms of the verbs: